Rocket Scooter

College Textbook Edition
with Tests and Answer Key

Chapters 00–15, each with a Chapter Test and a Spiral Test

Study Guide and Final Review

Final Tests A and B

Glossary · Appendices A–C

Appendix D: Answer Key

VerbonZone

Drawn from Matt’s public streams

Year-one corpus, 2025-09 to 2026-09

Edition date: 2026-10-09 (review draft)

Large print: 15 pt body text, 14 pt tables, US Letter, Liberation Serif and Sans.

Not financial advice. This textbook is an educational synthesis of public Rocket Scooter / Futures Trading with Matt stream teaching only. Futures trading involves substantial risk of loss. Risk-interval (RI) numbers change daily; pull today's RI from the platform. Nothing here is a trade recommendation or solicitation. Watch links use auto-caption timestamps and can land a few seconds off.

Contents

00 — Front Matter: How to Use This Textbook 6

01 — What Is Rocket Scooter 12

- Chapter Test 18
- Spiral Test 25

02 — Platform Setup Essentials 29

- Chapter Test 35
- Spiral Test 42

03 — VWAP as a Line of Interest 45

- Chapter Test 50
- Spiral Test 57

04 — Half-Gap and Gap Structure 61

- Chapter Test 67
- Spiral Test 74

05 — Gap-Fill 78

- Chapter Test 85
- Spiral Test 92

06 — Risk Interval (RI) 96

- Chapter Test 103
- Spiral Test 110

07 — VARIS Bands (VWAP ± RI) 113

- Chapter Test 121
- Spiral Test 128

08 — Rocket Levels, HV / Volume 132

- Chapter Test 138
- Spiral Test 145

09 — Confluence 148
Chapter Test 154
Spiral Test 161
10 — Entries, Exits, and Trade Management 164
Chapter Test 170
Spiral Test 177
11 — Risk Management and When Not to Press 181
Chapter Test 188
Spiral Test 195
12 — Overnight / Globex Context 199
Chapter Test 205
Spiral Test 212
13 — ARB and Resilience Tools 216
Chapter Test 223
Spiral Test 230
14 — Instruments and Sessions (ES / NQ / MES Notes) 234
Chapter Test 241
Spiral Test 248
15 — Putting It Together (Day Checklist) 252
Chapter Test 261
Spiral Test 268
Study Guide and Final Review 271
Final Test A 277
Final Test B 284
Glossary 291
Appendix A — Topic Lookup Map (URLs) 300
Appendix B — Lecture Pages 303

Appendix C — Chapter-to-Watch Index.....305
Appendix D: Answer Key 308

00 — Front Matter: How to Use This Textbook

Rocket Scooter — College Textbook Edition
Synthesized for VerbonZone from Matt's public streams (@FuturesTradingWithMatt / Rocket Scooter community).

Learning objectives

- Explain what this textbook is (and is not) relative to live streams and transcript dumps.
- Locate the corpus window, ASR caveat, and VerbonZone study shelf.
- Choose a study path through chapters 01–15 using Watch links with charts open.
- Distinguish thick (well-evidenced) topics from thin (limited-evidence) topics.

Main teaching

What this book is

This is a **student textbook**: clear prose, learning objectives, key terms, references, summaries, and judgment questions. It is **not** a dump of stream transcripts. Ideas that repeat across Matt's year-one mornings are merged into one explanation, then backed with timestamped Watch clips and VerbonZone hops.

Source teacher: Matt — Futures Trading with Matt / Rocket Scooter community.

Study shelf: VerbonZone (`verbonzone.com`) holds the plain-text book, one-hop lookups (`rs-*.txt`), and lecture pages.

Corpus window

Item	Detail
Window	~2025-09-16 → 2026-09-18 (year-one edition)
Manifest	~316 videos; ~313 trimmed teaching files; ~314 timed-caption files
Topic index	~15,792 hits across 19 topic keys
Public how-to (prior spine)	https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt
This textbook (publish)	https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter-textbook.txt
One-hop lookup	https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt

How to use Watch links

Every major concept includes links like:

`https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VIDEO_ID&t=SECONDS`

1. Open the link — YouTube jumps near that teaching moment.
2. Timestamps come from auto-captions (± a few seconds typical).
3. If a clip feels off, scrub a few seconds or open the matching `rs-*.txt` / lecture page.
4. Prefer watching with your chart open and the same marks Matt is discussing.

ASR caveat (read once)

YouTube auto-captions are imperfect. They often mishear **VARIS** as “varus / various / Varys,” garble tickers, and drop words. This textbook writes terms correctly in prose. Quotes in the topic index may be lightly cleaned or paraphrased. Scrub a few seconds if a clip landing feels wrong.

Video lectures

Lecture (video-book) pages package a subject with a short how-to plus curated Watch packs:

- **Half-gap (live):** https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt
- Other lecture subjects: TBD (see Appendix B)

Suggested study path

Front matter → What is RS → Platform → VWAP → Half-gap → Gap-fill → RI → VARIS → Rocket/HV → Confluence → Entries → Risk → Overnight → ARB → Instruments → Day checklist.

After the chapters: the Study Guide and Final Review, the Glossary, and Appendices A–C.

Replay Watch links while charts are open. Use Appendix A when you need a URL hop.

Tests and answer key (this edition)

Every chapter from 01 to 15 ends with two tests:

- **Chapter Test**: 50 questions on that chapter, 10 each of matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay.

- **Spiral Test**: 20 questions, 4 of each style, on everything earlier in the book. Chapter 01's Spiral Test covers this Front Matter, because there is no earlier chapter. This Front Matter has no Chapter Test of its own.

After the Study Guide come **Final Test A** and **Final Test B**, each 50 questions on the whole book. **Appendix D: Answer Key** at the very back has the answers to every test, with a reason for each false statement and a short model-answer outline for each essay. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words and ask for the read or action this book teaches.

Caveats that apply to every chapter

- **Not financial advice.** Educational synthesis of public stream teaching only. Futures trading involves substantial risk of loss.
- **RI numbers change.** Pull today's RI from the platform. Stream callouts (e.g. NQ/MNQ ~288, ES/MES ~70 on late-sample days) are **day examples**, not fixed defaults.
- **Thin topics stay thin.** Prop rules, open-drive theory, and micros-only curriculum have limited index hits. Chapters mark limited evidence; they do not invent rules.

Voice of this textbook

College textbook tone: clear, structured, respectful of Matt as source teacher and VerbonZone as the study shelf. No hype. Judgment questions encourage thinking, not rote answers.

Key terms

- **Year-one corpus** — Matt mornings / Rocket Scooter streams roughly 2025-09-16 through 2026-09-18.

- **VerbonZone** — Public study shelf for Rocket Scooter lookups, lectures, and this textbook.
- **Watch link** — YouTube URL with `&t=SECONDS` landing near a teaching moment.
- **ASR** — Automatic speech recognition (YouTube captions); imperfect for trading jargon.
- **Thick / thin topic** — Well-covered vs limited-evidence concepts in the year-one index.

References

VerbonZone

- Master how-to book: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt
- This textbook: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter-textbook.txt
- Lookup index: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt
- Lecture half-gap: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Platform identity / HV pivots rundown (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13693
- Predictable HV pivot framing (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12118
- Teachable style / platform identity (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c2sXPsMz0os&t=8187

Chapter summary

- This textbook synthesizes repeating teaching into student chapters; it is not a transcript dump.
- Corpus window is ~2025-09-16 → 2026-09-18; Watch links use auto-caption timestamps.
- VerbonZone holds the plain-text publish copy, `rs-*.txt` hops, and lecture pages.
- ASR mishears jargon (especially VARIS); prose here uses correct terms.
- Thick topics dominate; thin topics are labeled, not invented.
- Study with charts open; use the day checklist (Ch. 15) after core chapters.
- Not financial advice; RI is day-specific from the platform.

Questions to think about

1. How does a synthesized textbook differ from watching one random stream end-to-end?
2. Why does the ASR caveat matter specifically for VARIS and RI language?
3. Which VerbonZone URL would you open first if you forgot a definition mid-session?
4. If a Watch link lands a few seconds early or late, what should you do before concluding the clip is “wrong”?
5. Which thin topics should you refuse to over-trade until you have more personal evidence?

01 — What Is Rocket Scooter

Learning objectives

- Define Rocket Scooter as both a platform and a way of reading the day.
- List the core level stack Matt teaches across the year-one corpus.
- Distinguish platform numbers from strategy decisions and community overlays.
- Sketch a simplified day-shape from overnight through late session.
- Identify which topics are strongest vs still thin after a full year of streams.

Main teaching

In one sentence

Rocket Scooter is both a **trading platform** and a **way of reading the day**: high-volume pivots, risk intervals from CME-style margin math, VWAP-centered VARIS bands, gap / half-gap structure, overnight and hedge-pressure levels, plus confluence reads (resilience, ARB, and related tools).

What the platform gives you

Repeated rundowns across the year land on the same stack:

- High-volume pivots (the yellow “rocket” lines people trade)
- Risk intervals and DD bands
- Overnight / dynamic hedge pressure and monthly hedge pressure (MHP)
- Gap-fill context
- Resilience-style strength reads on the underlying

- Community overlays around VWAP (VARIS / “Varys” bands)

Matt does not present this as a black-box signal service. On stream he walks *which level*, *what confluence*, and *what size*.

Who the material fits

From how Matt teaches, this material fits traders who:

- Day-trade index futures (mostly **NQ / ES**, often with **MNQ / MES**)
- Want **pre-marked levels** instead of inventing support/resistance every morning
- Prefer a **mechanical backbone**: alert at a level → decide with confluence → size small until edge shows
- Are willing to learn a small vocabulary: VWAP, half-gap, RI, VARIS, DD band, MHP, ARB, resilience

Strategy vs platform vs overlays

Piece	Role
Platform	Numbers and lines: RI, DD, overnight / dynamic HP, MHP, HV pivots, scanners
Strategy	How you use them: wait for price at a level, read confluence, trade band-to-band or gap logic, manage risk
Community overlays	VARIS (dynamic RI around VWAP), ARB, Bookmap / order-flow as optional confluence

You can trade “just yellow lines + half-gaps” on a rough day when fancy confluence tools are down. The full stack is levels + VWAP/VARIS + confluence.

How a day often fits together

A simplified day-shape from habits that repeat (not a rigid script Matt reads every morning):

1. **Before / overnight** — Overnight / dynamic levels and RI numbers refresh from prior close / CME-style margin data. Hosts often pull RI for NQ / ES / gold from the platform table.
2. **Into the cash open** — Note gap vs prior close, half-gap, DD / MHP, and where VWAP will start mattering.
3. **Open / first hour** — Decide whether gap-fill, hold half-gap, or reclaim / lose VWAP is the story. Open-drive longs are **not** a default habit in the corpus (see Ch. 14).
4. **Mid-session** — Trade rocket / HV levels and VARIS band-to-band ("Honda") with ARB / resilience as filters.
5. **Later day** — Same levels; respect when confluence flips. ("Often smaller size" late in the day is this book's study suggestion, not a quoted rule.)

Core vocabulary (preview)

- **VWAP** — Volume-weighted average price; center line for VARIS.
- **Risk interval (RI)** — Distance tied to CME margin / "margin-call distance" framing; **not** a Bollinger-style standard deviation. Per instrument; refreshes — pull from platform.
- **VARIS bands** — Dynamic half / full (and sometimes 2×) RI around VWAP; inner vs outer.
- **DD bands** — Static RI pivots from the platform's daily math.
- **Half-gap** — Midpoint between open and prior close (also new-week opening half-gap).

- **Rocket / yellow levels** — Predicted high-volume pivots.
- **MHP / HP** — Monthly / hedge-pressure lines; strong planned pivots in boot-camp style examples.
- **ARB / resilience** — Confluence / strength reads (ARB also used as a scalping tell).

Year-one strength note

Teaching is **strongest** on VWAP + RI / VARIS, half-gap / gap-fill, rocket / HV levels, confluence sizing, ARB/resilience, and live entry management. **Thinner** even after ~316 videos: formal prop-firm compliance, open-drive theory, micros-only setup. Later chapters say when evidence is limited.

Key terms

- **Rocket Scooter** — Platform plus playbook: HV pivots, RI, HP/MHP, gap tools, strength reads.
- **Platform vs strategy** — Platform publishes numbers/lines; strategy is how you wait, filter, and size.
- **Confluence** — Agreement among independent reads (level + VWAP side + ARB/resilience, etc.) that grades size.
- **Day-shape** — Simplified overnight → open → mid → late pattern of habits, not a rigid checklist.

References

VerbonZone

- Book section Overview: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt (search “01 — Overview”)

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-rocket-scooter.txt
- Lookup index: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Predictable HV pivots — orange/green RI framing (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12118
- Rocket Scooter in one breath — HV, RI, overnight HP, resilience (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13693
- Yellow HV pivot bounce — “what Rocket Scooter is” (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13734
- Overnight levels + predicting volume before the session (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=8658
- Half-gaps + yellow lines as S/R when confluence tools offline (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PX4O2lA6eDw&t=8604
- Confluence → size ladder (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tKnManUmpQ8&t=5161

Chapter summary

- Rocket Scooter is both a platform (numbers/lines) and a strategy of waiting at levels with confluence.
- Core stack: HV/rocket levels, RI/DD, overnight HP/MHP, gap/half-gap, VWAP/VARIS, ARB/resilience.
- On a rough day, yellow lines + half-gaps alone can still be traded as S/R.
- A simplified day runs overnight marks → open gap story → mid-session band/rocket trades → smaller late size.
- Confluence grades size more than FOMO does.

- Year-one evidence is thick on core levels and thin on prop/open-drive/micros curriculum.
- Vocabulary preview prepares chapters 03–13; RI must be pulled fresh each day.

Questions to think about

1. If confluence tools are down, what minimum stack does Matt still trade — and why is that pedagogically useful?
2. How would you explain “platform vs strategy” to a classmate who only wants entry signals?
3. Which part of the day-shape is most likely to fail if overnight levels have not refreshed?
4. Why is “not a signals black box” an important framing for a textbook student?
5. Name two thick and two thin topics you should treat differently in your own notes.

Chapter Test

Chapter 01: What Is Rocket Scooter

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Rocket Scooter	_____	**A.** A simplified overnight, open, mid-session, and late pattern of habits, not a rigid checklist
2.	Platform	_____	**B.** A platform plus a playbook: HV pivots, RI, HP and MHP, gap tools, and strength reads
3.	Strategy	_____	**C.** VARIS, ARB, and Bookmap or order flow used as optional confluence
4.	Community overlays	_____	**D.** Alert at a level, decide with confluence, size small until edge shows

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Confluence	_____	**E.** The midpoint between the open and the prior close
6.	Day-shape	_____	**F.** How you use the numbers: wait for price at a level, read confluence, size, and manage risk
7.	Rocket or yellow levels	_____	**G.** Publishes the numbers and lines: RI, DD, overnight and dynamic HP, MHP, HV pivots, scanners
8.	Half-gap	_____	**H.** Static RI pivots from the platform's daily math
9.	DD bands	_____	**I.** Agreement among independent reads that grades size
10.	Mechanical backbone	_____	**J.** Predicted high-volume pivots

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Rocket Scooter is described as both a trading platform and a way of reading the day.

2. _____ Matt presents Rocket Scooter as a black-box signal service.

3. _____ The material mostly fits traders who day-trade index futures such as NQ and ES.

4. _____ Risk interval is a Bollinger-style standard deviation band.

5. _____ VARIS is listed as a community overlay, while RI and DD come from the platform.

6. _____ Open-drive longs are a default habit in the year-one corpus.

7. _____ “Often smaller size late in the day” is this book’s study suggestion, not a quoted rule from Matt.

8. _____ Formal prop-firm compliance is one of the strongest topics after a full year of streams.

9. _____ **Setup:** The fancy confluence tools are down this morning, but your yellow lines and half-gap marks are on the chart. The chapter says you can still trade yellow lines and half-gaps as support and resistance.

10. _____ **Setup:** Price reaches a yellow line and you have not checked any confluence. Chapter 01 says to size up right away because yellow lines are the headline feature.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. VWAP stands for volume-weighted _____ price.

2. The yellow “rocket” lines are predicted _____ pivots.

3. MHP stands for monthly _____ pressure.

4. Risk interval is tied to CME _____ math.

5. VWAP is the center line for the _____ bands.

6. Half-gap is the midpoint between the open and the prior _____.

7. On stream Matt walks through which level, what confluence, and what _____.

8. The mechanical backbone is: alert at a level, decide with confluence, size _____ until edge shows.

9. The full stack is levels plus VWAP and VARIS plus _____.

10. Teaching is thinner on formal prop-firm compliance, open-drive theory, and _____-only setup.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which of these is a platform piece rather than a community overlay?

A. DD bands

B. VARIS bands

C. Bookmap

D. ARB

2. Which instruments does this material mostly fit?

A. Currency pairs only

B. Options chains only

C. Individual stocks only

D. NQ and ES index futures, often with MNQ and MES

3. How does Chapter 01 frame risk interval?

A. A volume profile from yesterday

B. A distance tied to CME margin and margin-call framing

C. A standard deviation of price

D. A moving average of closes

4. Which topic is listed as thinner, even after about 316 videos?

A. Half-gap and gap-fill

B. Rocket and HV levels

C. VWAP and VARIS

D. Open-drive theory

5. In the simplified day-shape, what usually happens mid-session?

A. Waiting for overnight levels to publish

B. Trading rocket levels and VARIS band-to-band with ARB and resilience as filters

C. Pulling the RI number for the first time

D. Buying every opening drive

6. What does the strategy add that the platform does not?

A. The HV pivots

B. The RI number

C. How you wait, filter, and size

D. The scanners

7. Which ARB use is mentioned in Chapter 01?

A. It replaces all levels

B. It anchors VWAP

C. It is also used as a scalping tell

D. It publishes the RI number

8. Setup: Before the cash open you see a gap from the prior close. In the day-shape, what do you note into the cash open?

A. Gap versus prior close, half-gap, DD and MHP, and where VWAP will start mattering

B. Nothing until midday

C. Only order flow

D. Only late-day levels

9. Setup: It is the first hour of the session. Which question does the day-shape say decides the story?

A. Which host is on stream

B. How large yesterday's volume profile was

C. Gap-fill, hold half-gap, or reclaim or lose VWAP

D. Whether to buy every open drive

10. Setup: A classmate wants only entry signals and ignores sizing. Which correction fits Chapter 01 best?

A. Rocket Scooter is not a black box; confluence grades size, and you stay small until edge shows

B. Signals are all you need, so size does not matter

C. Ignore VWAP and use only ARB

D. Size up on every yellow line

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the difference between the platform, the strategy, and community overlays. Give one example of each.

2. Describe the simplified day-shape from overnight through late day. Why does the book say it is not a rigid script?

3. Why is it useful that yellow lines and half-gaps can still be traded when confluence tools are down?

4. List the year-one strong topics and thin topics, and explain how a student should treat each kind differently.

5. Explain why “not a black-box signal service” is an important framing for a student of this textbook.

6. How would you explain “platform vs strategy” to a classmate who only wants entry signals?

7. Explain the core vocabulary preview in Chapter 01 by defining any five of its terms.

8. Which part of the day-shape is most likely to fail if overnight levels have not refreshed? Explain.

9. Why does Chapter 01 say “confluence grades size more than FOMO does”? Explain using the mechanical backbone.

10. Explain why the book labels “smaller size late in the day” as its own suggestion, and what that teaches about reading the textbook.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 01: What Is Rocket Scooter

Covers: the Front Matter (Chapter 00) only. Chapter 01 has no earlier chapter, so this Spiral Test reviews the Front Matter.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Year-one corpus	_____	**A.** Automatic speech recognition (YouTube captions), imperfect for trading jargon
2.	VerbonZone	_____	**B.** A YouTube URL with &t=SECONDS that lands near a teaching moment
3.	Watch link	_____	**C.** Matt’s streams from roughly 2025-09-16 through 2026-09-18

No.	Term	Answer	Description
4.	ASR	_____	**D.** The public study shelf for lookups, lectures, and this textbook

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Watch link timestamps come from auto-captions and can be a few seconds off.

2. _____ This textbook is a dump of stream transcripts.

3. _____ Stream RI callouts such as NQ about 288 are fixed defaults you can reuse every day.

4. _____ **Setup:** A Watch link lands a few seconds before the teaching moment. The front matter says to scrub a few seconds or open the matching lookup page before deciding the clip is wrong.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Auto-captions often mishear _____ as “varus,” “various,” or “Varys.”

2. Thin topics include prop rules, open-drive theory, and _____-only curriculum.

3. A well-covered topic is called thick; a limited-evidence topic is called _____.

4. The textbook is educational synthesis and is _____ financial advice.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Who is the source teacher for this textbook?

A. An anonymous Discord user

B. Brad

C. Matt (Futures Trading with Matt / Rocket Scooter community)

D. A prop firm

2. Which half-gap page is listed as a live video lecture?

A. lecture-confluence.txt

B. lecture-half-gap.txt

C. lecture-vwap.txt

D. lecture-gap-fill.txt

3. How should you watch the Watch links, according to the front matter?

A. With the sound off

B. With your chart open and the same marks Matt is discussing

C. Only after finishing the whole book

D. At double speed to save time

4. Setup: You are mid-session and forget a definition. Which VerbonZone page is the one-hop lookup index?

A. rs-lookup.txt

B. lecture-half-gap.txt

C. dd-bands.txt

D. rocket-scooter-textbook.txt

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain what this textbook is and what it is not.

2. Why does the ASR caveat matter for a student reading quotes and watching clips?

3. What does “thin topics stay thin” mean, and which topics does the front matter name?

4. Describe the three caveats that apply to every chapter.

02 — Platform Setup Essentials

Learning objectives

- Describe what the Rocket Scooter platform publishes for a typical futures day.
- Locate risk-interval (RARI/RI) numbers on the platform table.
- Explain overnight-level refresh and caching quirks in practical terms.
- List a minimum chart stack that works with the platform numbers.
- Recognize that first-time wiring help is Discord-first (limited polished install video).

Main teaching

What you are setting up

Rocket Scooter as used on stream is a **web / server-side platform** that publishes:

- Risk interval numbers per instrument (often shown as **RARI / RI** and **DD** columns)
- Overnight / dynamic levels and hedge-pressure related lines
- High-volume / rocket pivots
- Related scanners and feeds

Community indicators (especially **VARIS** around VWAP) need the **RI number** from the platform (or from a streamer / Discord) to plot correctly.

Where to find setup help (as taught on stream)

When someone asked for a step-by-step after signing up:

1. Use the **Rocket Scooter Discord**
2. Start in **platform setup**
3. Then **tech support** if still stuck

Matt has noted he did not always have one dedicated walkthrough video in the moment — Discord channels first. This textbook therefore teaches *how the numbers are used*, not every broker/chart plugin install path.

Getting risk interval numbers

A clear walkthrough pattern that repeats:

1. Open the Rocket Scooter platform.
2. Click the small **carrot / expand** control at the bottom.
3. Open the table (scanner / connections / events / feed area).
4. Go to the **risk interval / DD band** section.
5. Read the **RARI / RI column** for each instrument you trade (NQ, ES, MNQ, MES, gold, etc.).

Refresh the platform when you need a new RI number after the data rolls.

Overnight levels and caching quirks

Across months, hosts sometimes wait on overnight levels to appear, or note caching of the wrong day's MHP / overnight data. Teaching takeaways:

- Prefer the **overnight MHP / overnight levels** when the platform has refreshed correctly.
- If levels are missing at the bell, **wait** rather than inventing them.

- Static structures (DD, RI from prior close) still exist even when overnight HV lines are late.

Chart stack people use with the platform

From repeated stream talk (not a single mandated template):

- **VWAP** (session handling matters — overnight inclusion changes VARIS)
- **VARIS / Varys bands** (half / full / optional 2× RI)
- **DD bands** (static)
- **Yellow rocket / HV lines**, MHP, weekly / dynamic HP as available
- Half-gap and gap-fill marks
- Optional: Bookmap or other order-flow as confluence (Ch. 13)

Architecture color (not a setup step)

Matt briefly described indications computed **on a server and streamed to the platform** (security of the indication / not easily reverse-engineered on the client). Treat that as architecture context.

Limited-evidence note

`platform-setup` has hundreds of year-one index hits, but many are live troubleshooting rather than a beginner install guide. For first-time credentials and Discord channels, use the Discord **platform setup** path Matt pointed to — then return here for how the numbers enter the trade plan.

Key terms

- **RARI / RI column** — Platform table field holding today’s risk-interval number per instrument.

- **DD column / DD bands** — Static RI-based daily pivots published beside RI.
- **Overnight / dynamic levels** — Session-pre or overnight HV/HP lines that must refresh before you invent marks.
- **Carrot / expand control** — UI control at the bottom of the platform used to open the RI/DD table.

References

VerbonZone

- Book section Platform Setup: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt (search “02 — Platform”)
- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-platform-setup.txt
- RI hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-interval.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Where to find platform setup / tech support after signup (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=12202
- Find RI / DD on the platform table (carrot → RARI) (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=8002
- Risk interval table at the bottom — lift the window (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BLr8IzA_lcs&t=12295
- RI from the Rocket Scooter platform itself (2026-06): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u40ESDD65kw&t=6847
- RI comes from CME margin-style data on the platform (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=D0jlukYhjQU&t=5567

- Waiting on overnight futures levels (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pLOebitxKWo&t=1139
- VARIS needs the RI number (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pi7Xsc38r_Q&t=3992

Chapter summary

- The platform publishes RI/DD, overnight/dynamic levels, HV/rocket pivots, and related feeds.
- VARIS plotting requires today's RI number from the platform (or stream/Discord).
- First-time setup help is Discord-first; this chapter is about using numbers, not every install path.
- Find RI via carrot → table → RARI/RI column; refresh when data rolls.
- If overnight levels are late, wait; DD/RI static structures still exist.
- Minimum chart stack: VWAP, VARIS, DD, yellows/MHP, half-gap/gap-fill.
- Server-side indication streaming is architecture color, not a checklist step.

Questions to think about

1. Why does inventing overnight levels when the platform is late create a false sense of precision?
2. Which column do you read for today's RI, and why must you re-check after a refresh?
3. If VARIS looks wrong on two charts, what platform/session setting should you inspect first?
4. How would you help a classmate who signed up but cannot find the RI table?

5. What is the difference between a troubleshooting hit in the index and a full install curriculum?

Chapter Test

Chapter 02: Platform Setup Essentials

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	RARI / RI column	_____	**A.** Indications computed on a server and streamed to the platform (architecture context)
2.	DD column / DD bands	_____	**B.** Optional order-flow tool used as confluence
3.	Overnight / dynamic levels	_____	**C.** Platform table field holding today’s risk-interval number per instrument
4.	Carrot / expand control	_____	**D.** What you do to the platform when you need a new RI number after the data rolls

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Rocket Scooter Discord	_____	**E.** Whether overnight data is included; changes how VARIS looks
6.	VARIS	_____	**F.** Static RI-based daily pivots published beside RI
7.	Server-side indication	_____	**G.** Community indicator around VWAP that needs the RI number to plot correctly
8.	Refresh	_____	**H.** Small control at the bottom of the platform used to open the RI and DD table
9.	VWAP session handling	_____	**I.** Overnight HV and HP lines that must refresh before you invent marks
10.	Bookmap	_____	**J.** First stop for setup help: platform setup channel, then tech support

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Rocket Scooter as used on stream is a web or server-side platform.

2. _____ VARIS can be plotted correctly without any RI number.

3. _____ When someone asked for step-by-step setup help, they were pointed to the Rocket Scooter Discord, platform setup first, then tech support.

4. _____ This chapter is a complete install guide for every broker and chart plugin.

5. _____ The RI number is read from the RARI / RI column of the platform table.

6. _____ The server-side indication streaming is a checklist step you must complete before trading.

7. _____ Static structures such as DD and RI from the prior close still exist even when overnight HV lines are late.

8. _____ The chart stack in this chapter is a single mandated template that everyone must use.

9. _____ **Setup:** It is the bell and the overnight levels have not appeared on the platform. Chapter 02 says to draw your best guess of where they will be.

10. _____ **Setup:** You plotted RI this morning, and later the platform rolls new data. Refreshing the platform to get the new RI number is the correct step.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. To open the RI table, click the small _____ (expand) control at the bottom of the platform.

2. For first-time setup help, start in the Discord channel called platform _____.

3. If still stuck after platform setup, go to the _____ channel.

4. The RI column is often labeled _____ / RI.

5. DD bands are _____ structures, not dynamic ones.

6. When overnight levels are late at the bell, you should _____ rather than invent them.

7. Hosts sometimes note caching of the wrong day's _____ or overnight data.

8. Prefer the overnight MHP and overnight levels when the platform has _____ correctly.

9. Overnight inclusion in _____ changes how VARIS looks.

10. Bookmap is an optional _____ tool used as confluence.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which of these does the platform publish, according to Chapter 02?

A. A finished trade plan

B. Risk interval numbers per instrument

C. Prop-firm rules

D. Your broker's account balance

2. Where is the risk interval / DD band section found?

A. In the chart's drawing toolbar

B. On the YouTube video description

C. In the table opened from the carrot control at the bottom of the platform

D. In a separate Excel file emailed daily

3. Why does Chapter 02 teach how numbers are used rather than every install path?

A. Setup help is Discord-first and there was not always one dedicated walkthrough video

B. Every broker uses the same plugin

C. Matt does not use a chart

D. Installing is forbidden

4. Which is NOT listed in the chart stack people use with the platform?

A. DD bands

B. VWAP

C. Half-gap and gap-fill marks

D. A fixed set of Bollinger standard deviation bands

5. What is the main teaching takeaway about overnight-level caching quirks?

A. Invent levels from memory

B. Ignore overnight levels entirely

C. Always use yesterday’s MHP

D. Prefer refreshed overnight levels and wait if they are missing

6. What makes the platform-setup index topic weaker as a beginner guide?

A. Many hits are live troubleshooting rather than a beginner install guide

B. It covers only gold

C. It is about options only

D. It has fewer than ten hits

7. Which instruments are named as rows you might read in the RI column?

A. Only individual stocks

B. Only bonds

C. NQ, ES, MNQ, MES, and gold

D. Only Bitcoin

8. Setup: A new student signed up but cannot find the RI table. What should you tell them first?

A. Use the RI from a video last month

B. Open the platform, click the carrot at the bottom, open the table, go to the risk interval / DD band section, and read the RARI / RI column

C. Calculate a standard deviation instead

D. Ask a prop firm for the number

9. Setup: Two minutes after the bell, overnight HV lines still have not published. What still exists on your chart?

A. Static structures such as DD and RI from the prior close

B. Only last week's overnight lines

C. Only Bookmap

D. Nothing at all, so you must guess

10. Setup: A classmate's VARIS bands look different from yours even though you both used today's RI. What is the first setup item to check?

A. The broker's commission

B. The chart's font size

C. The color of the bands

D. How each chart handles the VWAP session and overnight data

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. List what the Rocket Scooter platform publishes and explain why VARIS depends on it.

2. Describe the step-by-step path to read today's risk interval.

3. What should you do when overnight levels are late or cached wrong, and why?

4. Describe a minimum chart stack that works with the platform numbers.

5. Explain why first-time setup help is Discord-first and what that means for how you use this chapter.

6. Why does inventing overnight levels when the platform is late create a false sense of precision?

7. Which column do you read for today's RI, and why must you re-check after a refresh?

8. How would you help a classmate who signed up but cannot find the RI table?

9. Explain the difference between a troubleshooting hit in the index and a full install curriculum.

10. Explain what the "architecture color" about server-side indications tells you, and why it is not a setup step.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 02: Platform Setup Essentials

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapter 01.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Day-shape	_____	**A.** Numbers and lines versus how you wait, filter, and size (Ch. 01)
2.	Thick topic	_____	**B.** Simplified overnight, open, mid, and late pattern of habits (Ch. 01)
3.	Platform vs strategy	_____	**C.** Automatic speech recognition captions that mishear trading jargon (Ch. 00)
4.	ASR	_____	**D.** A well-evidenced concept in the year-one index (Ch. 00)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ The front matter says the textbook is not a dump of stream transcripts.

2. _____ Chapter 01 lists VARIS as a platform number.

3. _____ RI numbers heard on stream are day examples, not fixed defaults.

4. _____ **Setup:** Your confluence tools are down. Chapter 01 says you cannot trade at all on such a day.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. The corpus window runs from about 2025-09-16 to _____.

2. Rocket or yellow levels are predicted _____ pivots.

3. Half-gap is the midpoint between the open and the prior _____.

4. Confluence grades _____ more than FOMO does.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which of these is a community overlay?

A. HV pivots

B. ARB

C. DD bands

D. MHP

2. Which is a thin topic named in both the front matter and Chapter 01?

A. Risk interval

B. Half-gap

C. Open-drive theory

D. VWAP

3. What is a Watch link?

A. A broker login page

B. A prop-firm rulebook

C. A YouTube URL with a time marker that lands near a teaching moment

D. A link to buy the platform

4. Setup: You open a Watch link and the clip lands on unrelated chatter. What does the book suggest first?

A. Trust the captions word for word

B. Report the clip as wrong immediately

C. Skip the topic entirely

D. Scrub a few seconds or open the matching lookup or lecture page

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain why RI numbers heard on stream must not be copied as defaults.

2. Describe the minimum stack you can trade when confluence tools are down, and connect it to the idea of thick topics.

3. Explain the mechanical backbone in Chapter 01 and why it suits a student.

4. Why does the textbook use Watch links with charts open instead of asking you to watch whole streams?

03 — VWAP as a Line of Interest

Learning objectives

- Explain VWAP's role as the center / mean line in the Rocket Scooter playbook.
- Connect VWAP to risk-interval containment (VWAP ± RI) without confusing it with std-dev bands.
- Describe how overnight inclusion in VWAP changes VARIS appearance.
- List common live uses of VWAP (bias hinge, stop reference, reclaim/lose).
- Practice a one-hour journal drill using only VWAP side of price.

Main teaching

What VWAP is doing in this playbook

VWAP (volume-weighted average price) is the **center line** everything else hangs on:

- VARIS / Varys bands = risk-interval distances **above and below VWAP**
- Reclaiming or losing VWAP is a live decision point
- Consolidating under VWAP vs holding above changes how aggressive Matt is on longs / shorts
- Stops are sometimes parked "a little beyond VWAP"

In textbook language: treat VWAP as the session's **line of interest** — the mean price path the community bands around. Matt does not always say the phrase "fair value" for VWAP itself (sometimes "fair value gap" appears in ICT-style chat); the *behavior* on stream is: **VWAP is the magnet and the bias hinge**.

VWAP + risk interval = containment

A community indicator Matt highlights plots **VWAP ± risk interval** — same principle as DD bands, but dynamic around VWAP. Teaching point: that containment of price has been "uncanny," and size goes smaller if price keeps falling through the lower side.

Important: these flanks are **half / full risk intervals**, not standard-deviation VWAP bands.

Session handling matters

VARIS "looking different" on two charts often comes down to **how overnight data is included in VWAP**. Matt notes VARIS depends on VWAP and overnight handling. Know your chart's session settings before comparing bands with a streamer.

How Matt uses VWAP in live decisions

Patterns that repeat across the year:

- **Short / fade** into a reclaim area or after a push into structure **off VWAP**
- **Long bias harder** when consolidating under a flat VWAP while other indexes disagree
- **Stop logic** near VWAP ("a little below VWAP, I'm out")
- **Targets** often the next VARIS band, half-gap, or rocket level — not VWAP alone

Pair VWAP with structure

VWAP alone is not the whole trade. Stronger reads stack:

- VWAP + half-gap / gap-fill story

- VWAP + VARIS inner/outer
- VWAP + rocket / yellow level
- VWAP + ARB / resilience sign

See Chapters 04–09 and 13.

Practice drill

1. Mark session VWAP (know your overnight setting).
2. Mark half and full RI bands (Ch. 06–07).
3. For one hour, only journal: *above / below / reclaim / lose* — no new indicators.
4. Then add one confluence read (ARB or resilience) and compare.

Key terms

- **VWAP** — Volume-weighted average price; center line / line of interest for the session.
- **Line of interest** — Textbook phrase for VWAP's role as magnet and bias hinge in this playbook.
- **Containment** — Price tending to respect VWAP ± RI distances (dynamic) or DD (static).
- **Session / overnight handling** — Whether overnight volume is included in VWAP; changes VARIS geometry.

References

VerbonZone

- Book section VWAP: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt (search “03 — VWAP”)
- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-vwap.txt
- VARIS hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-varis-bands.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- VWAP ± RI = same principle as DD band; containment (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=2581
- Risk-interval band around VWAP (2026-06): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BA8AgFORfkA&t=11392
- VARIS zone = dynamic RI around VWAP; DD = static (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oNr7tlCHCpY&t=13143
- Not std-dev VWAP — Varys flanks are half risk intervals (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1U4ZCJkks2I&t=1433
- VARIS differs when overnight VWAP handling differs (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J5aJTOyjspU&t=2990
- Stop a little below VWAP on NQ (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p4g79l9ilp8&t=14495
- Price consolidating under VWAP — wait / remember confluence (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=9076

Chapter summary

- VWAP is the center line; VARIS distances hang above and below it.

- VWAP ± RI is containment logic like DD, but dynamic with the session.
- Flanks are risk-interval multiples, not standard-deviation bands.
- Overnight inclusion in VWAP changes VARIS appearance across charts.
- Live uses: bias hinge, reclaim/lose triggers, stop reference; targets usually elsewhere.
- VWAP alone is incomplete — stack with gap structure, bands, rocket levels, ARB/resilience.
- A one-hour above/below journal builds judgment before adding tools.

Questions to think about

1. If two traders disagree on “where VARIS is,” what VWAP setting should they compare first?
2. Why might size shrink when price keeps slicing through the lower VWAP ± RI side?
3. When is fading at VWAP more justified than fading a random mid-range tick?
4. How does consolidating under a flat VWAP change long aggressiveness in Matt’s habits?
5. Design a one-hour journal template with only four VWAP states — what are they?

Chapter Test

Chapter 03: VWAP as a Line of Interest

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	VWAP	_____	**A.** One hour of journaling only above, below, reclaim, or lose
2.	Line of interest	_____	**B.** Whether overnight volume is included in VWAP; changes VARIS geometry
3.	Containment	_____	**C.** “A little below VWAP, I’m out”
4.	Session / overnight handling	_____	**D.** Price tending to respect VWAP plus or minus RI (dynamic) or DD (static)
5.	VWAP plus or minus RI	_____	**E.** What the VWAP flanks are, instead of standard-deviation bands

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	Half and full risk intervals	_____	**F.** Textbook phrase for VWAP as magnet and bias hinge
7.	Reclaim or lose VWAP	_____	**G.** Community indicator Matt highlights; same principle as DD bands but dynamic
8.	Stop near VWAP	_____	**H.** Volume-weighted average price; the center line of the session
9.	Targets	_____	**I.** A live decision point and trigger
10.	Practice drill	_____	**J.** Usually the next VARIS band, half-gap, or rocket level, not VWAP alone

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ In this playbook VARIS bands are risk-interval distances above and below VWAP.

2. _____ The flanks around VWAP in this playbook are standard-deviation bands.

3. _____ Two charts can show different VARIS bands because of how overnight data is included in VWAP.

4. _____ Matt usually uses VWAP alone as his trade target.

5. _____ Matt describes the containment of price by VWAP plus or minus RI as “uncanny.”

6. _____ Matt always calls VWAP “fair value.”

7. _____ The practice drill asks you to journal for one hour without adding new indicators.

8. _____ VWAP alone is presented as the whole trade.

9. _____ **Setup:** Price keeps falling through the lower side of VWAP plus or minus RI. Chapter 03 says size goes smaller in that situation.

10. _____ **Setup:** Price is consolidating under a flat VWAP while other indexes disagree. Chapter 03 says Matt becomes less willing to lean long in that spot.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. VWAP stands for volume-_____ average price.

2. The textbook calls VWAP the session's line of _____.

3. On stream, VWAP acts as the magnet and the bias _____.

4. VWAP plus or minus RI is the same principle as _____ bands, but dynamic around VWAP.

5. Stops are sometimes parked "a little _____ VWAP."

6. Before comparing bands with a streamer, know your chart's _____ settings.

7. The four journal states are above, below, reclaim, and _____.

8. In the drill, after one hour you add one confluence read, such as ARB or _____.

9. The flanks are half and full risk intervals, not standard-_____ bands.

10. VARIS depends on VWAP and _____ handling.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is VWAP’s role in the Rocket Scooter playbook?

A. A prop-firm rule

B. The center line everything else hangs on

C. A momentum oscillator

D. A replacement for all levels

2. What is “containment” in Chapter 03?

A. Price never moving

B. A volume spike

C. Price tending to respect VWAP plus or minus RI distances

D. A stop-loss order type

3. What most often makes VARIS look different on two charts?

A. Different monitors

B. Different colors

C. How overnight data is included in VWAP

D. Different brokers’ fees

4. Which is a common live use of VWAP listed in the chapter?

A. Bias hinge and reclaim or lose trigger

B. Setting the RI number

C. Publishing HV pivots

D. Measuring the new-week half-gap

5. Which pairing is listed as a stronger read than VWAP alone?

A. VWAP plus a rocket or yellow level

B. VWAP plus a hunch

C. VWAP plus a news headline

D. VWAP plus a random tick

6. In the practice drill, what do you do in the first hour?

A. Trade every VWAP touch at full size

B. Watch a full stream instead

C. Add five new indicators

D. Journal only above, below, reclaim, or lose

7. Where are targets usually placed in Matt's live habits?

A. At a random round number

B. The next VARIS band, half-gap, or rocket level

C. Wherever the last candle closed

D. Exactly at VWAP every time

8. Setup: You are short after a push into structure off VWAP. Where does the chapter say stops are sometimes parked?

A. No stop is needed

B. A little beyond VWAP

C. At yesterday's low

D. At the opposite outer band every time

9. Setup: Price is sliding repeatedly through the lower VWAP plus or minus RI side. What does the chapter say about size?

A. Size stays the same no matter what

B. Size goes larger

C. Close the platform

D. Size goes smaller

10. Setup: A streamer's bands do not match yours. Before arguing about where VARIS is, what should you compare first?

A. Your favorite instruments

B. Your chart colors

C. Your VWAP session and overnight settings

D. Your account sizes

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain why the book calls VWAP the "line of interest" and the "bias hinge."

2. Explain VWAP plus or minus RI containment and how it differs from standard-deviation bands.

3. Why do two traders sometimes disagree about where VARIS is? What should they do?

4. Describe how Matt uses VWAP in live decisions, including entries, stops, and targets.

5. Design the one-hour VWAP journal drill and explain what it teaches.

6. When is fading at VWAP more justified than fading a random mid-range tick?

7. How does consolidating under a flat VWAP change long aggressiveness in Matt’s habits?

8. Why might size shrink when price keeps slicing through the lower VWAP plus or minus RI side?

9. List the four stronger reads that pair VWAP with structure and explain one in detail.

10. Design a one-hour journal template with the four VWAP states and explain how you would use it.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 03: VWAP as a Line of Interest

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 02.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Carrot / expand control	_____	**A.** Static RI-based daily pivots published beside RI (Ch. 02)
2.	Confluence	_____	**B.** Public study shelf for lookups, lectures, and this textbook (Ch. 00)
3.	VerbonZone	_____	**C.** UI control at the bottom of the platform that opens the RI and DD table (Ch. 02)
4.	DD column / DD bands	_____	**D.** Agreement among independent reads that grades size (Ch. 01)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ VARIS needs today's RI number from the platform (or a streamer or Discord) to plot correctly.

2. _____ Formal prop-firm compliance is a thick topic in the year-one corpus.

3. _____ **Setup:** Overnight levels are missing at the bell. Chapters 01 and 02 support waiting rather than inventing them, while still using static structures like DD.

4. _____ **Setup:** A student copies last month's RI number onto today's chart because it came from a stream. The front matter says this is fine.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. The RI number is read from the _____ / RI column.

2. For setup help, start with the Rocket Scooter _____.

3. Rocket Scooter is both a trading platform and a way of reading the _____.

4. YouTube captions are produced by _____, which is imperfect for jargon.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. In Chapter 01, which piece is the “strategy”?

A. The RI column

B. The HV pivots

C. Waiting for price at a level, reading confluence, and managing risk

D. The scanners

2. Which control opens the platform table with the RI section?

A. The carrot / expand control at the bottom

B. A YouTube timestamp

C. The Discord login

D. The chart’s zoom button

3. Which is NOT one of the three caveats that apply to every chapter?

A. RI numbers change

B. Thin topics stay thin

C. Not financial advice

D. Every gap fills by the close

4. Setup: Your platform rolls new data during the morning. What should you do before plotting bands again?

A. Use a standard deviation

B. Keep the old number

C. Refresh the platform and re-read the RI number

D. Average the last five RI numbers

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Connect the day-shape in Chapter 01 with the overnight-level refresh issues in Chapter 02.

2. Explain why VARIS is called a community overlay and why it still depends on the platform.

3. Explain how the textbook handles thin topics, using examples from the front matter and Chapter 02.

4. Describe how a student should study a new chapter using the tools in the front matter.

04 — Half-Gap and Gap Structure

Learning objectives

- Define half-gap (session and new-week) and mark it from prior close and open.
- Describe how Matt uses half-gap as S/R, target, and confluence anchor.
- Relate resilience/ARB context to float vs resistance behavior at half-gap.
- Expand the lecture-half-gap how-to into a full study workflow with Watch packs.
- Judge when random open/close/half-gap taps without confluence deserve smaller size or a skip.

Main teaching

One-liner (from the video lecture)

Half-gap is the midpoint between the **prior session close** and **today's open** (and there is also a **new-week half-gap**: Friday close to Sunday open). Matt uses it as support/resistance, a target, and a confluence anchor.

This chapter expands the VerbonZone lecture page (`lecture-half-gap.txt`) into full textbook form. Sister idea **gap-fill** is Chapter 05; overnight/Globex context is Chapter 12.

How to mark it (student procedure)

1. Mark prior day close.
2. Mark Globex / session open.
3. Mark the midpoint — that is half-gap.

4. Also mark full gap-fill (back to prior close) when the gap matters (Ch. 05).
5. Ask: **fill, float, or fail** at half-gap?
6. Add confluence (VWAP, rocket/HV, VARIS, resilience/ARB) before sizing up.

How half-gap shows up on stream

- Support or resistance (“float at half-gap”)
- A scalp or swing target
- Context with ARB / resilience (stocks “achieved” half-gap)
- Something Matt will still trade as **pure S/R** when fancy confluence tools are down

Common live habits

- With **positive resilience**, half-gap often plays as a place to build / float
- With **negative resilience**, treat it more carefully as resistance or gap-fill fuel
- **ES and NQ can disagree** (one tags half-gap, one does not)
- Random open / close / half-gap taps **without confluence** — size down or skip

Matt has also stated he does not really take open / close / half-gap with only resilience unless he has something else — confluence first (see Watch pack clip 8 in the lecture).

Gap structure space

Think of the gap as a region between prior close and open. Half-gap sits in the middle of that space. Full fill returns to prior close. The geometry from prior ~4:00 p.m. Eastern close to the 9:30 cash open is the usual day-gap frame;

Globex open can add further timing language (“coming back up into Globex open”).

Half-gap + ARB / resilience (preview of Ch. 13)

- Positive ARB / resilience with price at half-gap → “float” / hold stories appear often
- ARB going negative while price rises can mean stocks already tagged half-gap and momentum quality changed

Student path (from the lecture)

1. Read the one-liner and how-to (~2 minutes).
2. Watch the definition clip (Watch list below, item 1).
3. If it does not land, watch a pure S/R or confluence clip (items 4–5).
4. Use the caution clip (item 8) as the risk reminder before you size up.

Key terms

- **Half-gap** — Midpoint between prior close and session open; also Friday close → Sunday open for new week.
- **Float at half-gap** — Hold / build language when confluence supports staying at the midpoint.
- **Gap structure** — The space between prior close and open in which half-gap and fill live.
- **Pure S/R** — Trading half-gaps (and yellows) as support/resistance without the full confluence stack.

References

VerbonZone

- Lecture page: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt
- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-half-gap.txt
- Book search Half-Gap: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt
- Sister gap-fill: https://verbonzone.com/rs-gap-fill.txt
- Confluence: https://verbonzone.com/rs-confluence.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- DEFINITION / STRUCTURE (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tP6y6FfHHvE&t=3541
- AS RESISTANCE WITH RESILIENCE (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nsAg2vkm9-w&t=4423
- GAP STRUCTURE / SPY OPEN VS PRIOR CLOSE (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=m_-NZGlGVMQ&t=7346
- PURE S/R WHEN CONFLUENCE TOOLS DOWN (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PX4O2lA6eDw&t=8604
- WITH CONFLUENCE — ROCK-SOLID S&P (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p4g79l9ilp8&t=11820
- HALF-GAP + GAP-FILL BUCKET, POSITIVE RESILIENCE (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=t7P6Tbt7m7I&t=3347
- ARB / FLOAT AT HALF-GAP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_i85LiARERE&t=5715
- CAUTION — CONFLUENCE FIRST (2026-05-22): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ih3wnGzWRWc&t=24600

Chapter summary

- Half-gap is the midpoint prior-close ↔ open (plus new-week Friday ↔ Sunday open).
- Uses: S/R, target, confluence anchor; still tradeable as pure S/R when tools are down.
- Mark prior close, open, midpoint, and full fill; ask fill / float / fail.
- Positive resilience often supports float; negative resilience elevates resistance / fill risk.
- ES and NQ may disagree at half-gap — compare indexes before sizing a "market" opinion.
- Random taps without confluence deserve smaller size or a skip.
- Lecture Watch pack spans months; use definition first, caution before sizing up.
- ARB/resilience refine the half-gap story; details continue in Ch. 13.

Questions to think about

1. Draw today's half-gap on a chart from memory of the six-step procedure — where did you hesitate?
2. Why can half-gap remain useful when ARB/VARIS tools are offline?
3. How should you interpret one index tagging half-gap while the other has not?
4. What judgment changes when resilience is negative at half-gap versus positive?
5. After watching the caution clip, when would you refuse a half-gap scalp despite a clean midpoint?

6. How does the new-week half-gap differ from the ordinary day half-gap in construction?

Chapter Test

Chapter 04: Half-Gap and Gap Structure

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Half-gap	_____	**A.** Trading half-gaps and yellows as support and resistance without the full confluence stack
2.	New-week half-gap	_____	**B.** Hold or build language when confluence supports staying at the midpoint
3.	Float at half-gap	_____	**C.** Often plays as a place to build or float
4.	Gap structure	_____	**D.** The lecture’s risk reminder to watch before you size up
5.	Pure S/R	_____	**E.** The question you ask at half-gap

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	Full fill	_____	**F.** Midpoint between Friday's close and Sunday's open
7.	Fill, float, or fail	_____	**G.** The space between prior close and open in which half-gap and fill live
8.	Positive resilience at half-gap	_____	**H.** Midpoint between the prior session close and today's open
9.	Negative resilience at half-gap	_____	**I.** Price returning all the way to the prior close
10.	Caution clip (item 8)	_____	**J.** Treat the midpoint more carefully as resistance or gap-fill fuel

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Half-gap is the midpoint between the prior session close and today's open.

2. _____ The new-week half-gap uses Monday's open and Monday's close.

3. _____ Matt uses half-gap as support or resistance, a target, and a confluence anchor.

4. _____ ES and NQ always agree at half-gap.

5. _____ Matt still trades half-gap as pure S/R when fancy confluence tools are down.

6. _____ Matt says he takes open, close, or half-gap trades with resilience alone.

7. _____ Chapter 04 expands the VerbonZone lecture page lecture-half-gap.txt into full textbook form.

8. _____ The usual day-gap frame runs from the prior 9:30 open to the 4:00 p.m. close.

9. _____ **Setup:** Price reaches half-gap with positive resilience and positive ARB. The chapter says “float” or hold stories often appear in this situation.

10. _____ **Setup:** Price taps half-gap with no other confluence on the chart. Chapter 04 says this is a good time to size up because half-gap is a strong level.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Half-gap is the _____ between prior close and open.

2. The new-week half-gap runs from Friday close to _____ open.

3. At half-gap, ask: fill, float, or _____?

4. “Float at half-gap” describes hold or _____ language.

5. Full gap-fill returns price to the prior _____.

6. Trading half-gaps and yellows without the full stack is called pure _____.

7. With _____ resilience, half-gap often plays as a place to build or float.

8. ARB going negative while price rises can mean stocks already _____ half-gap.

9. The sister idea of half-gap, covered in Chapter 05, is _____.

10. Before sizing up, add confluence such as VWAP, rocket or HV, VARIS, or resilience and _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What are the first three steps of the half-gap marking procedure?

A. Mark prior close, mark the open, mark the midpoint

B. Mark the high, mark the low, mark the close

C. Mark VWAP, mark RI, mark DD

D. Mark MHP, mark HP, mark the open

2. Which of these is NOT listed as a way half-gap shows up on stream?

A. Context with ARB and resilience

B. A scalp or swing target

C. Support or resistance

D. A guaranteed reversal point

3. What does negative resilience at half-gap suggest?

A. Always buy aggressively

B. The gap has already filled

C. Treat it more carefully as resistance or gap-fill fuel

D. Ignore half-gap

4. How does the book describe the gap?

A. A single price line at VWAP

B. A region between prior close and open, with half-gap in the middle

C. The distance between two VARIS bands

D. The overnight high to low

5. Which chapter covers overnight and Globex context, according to Chapter 04?

A. Chapter 03

B. Chapter 15

C. Chapter 12

D. Chapter 07

6. What is the first step of the student path from the lecture?

A. Read the one-liner and how-to

B. Skip to the confluence clip

C. Trade a half-gap live

D. Watch the caution clip

7. What should you do before sizing up at half-gap?

A. Remove all indicators

B. Add confluence such as VWAP, rocket or HV, VARIS, or ARB and resilience

C. Wait for the next week

D. Double size immediately

8. Setup: NQ has tagged half-gap but ES has not. What does Chapter 04 suggest?

A. Ignore ES completely

B. Assume both have tagged it

C. Size up on both

D. Compare indexes before sizing a “market” opinion

9. Setup: ARB turns negative while index price is still rising toward half-gap. What might this mean?

A. A new week has started

B. Stocks already tagged half-gap and momentum quality changed

C. The platform is broken

D. RI has changed

10. Setup: It is Monday morning. Which extra half-gap might you mark from the weekend?

A. A half-gap between Monday high and low

B. A half-gap between two VARIS bands

C. No extra mark exists

D. The new-week half-gap between Friday close and Sunday open

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Define half-gap and the new-week half-gap, and explain how to mark each.

2. Describe the six-step student procedure for half-gap and explain the purpose of the “fill, float, or fail” question.

3. How does resilience change the way Matt reads half-gap?

4. Why can half-gap remain useful when confluence tools are offline, and what limit does the chapter place on lone taps?

5. Explain why ES and NQ disagreeing at half-gap matters to a trader.

6. Draw today’s half-gap from the six-step procedure. Explain where students usually hesitate and why.

7. After watching the caution clip, when would you refuse a half-gap scalp despite a clean midpoint?

8. How does the new-week half-gap differ from the ordinary day half-gap in construction?

9. Explain the “gap structure space” and how half-gap and full fill sit inside it.

10. Explain the student path from the lecture and why the caution clip comes before sizing up.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 04: Half-Gap and Gap Structure

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 03.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Line of interest	_____	**A.** Platform plus playbook: HV pivots, RI, HP and MHP, gap tools, strength reads (Ch. 01)
2.	RARI / RI column	_____	**B.** Textbook phrase for VWAP’s role as magnet and bias hinge (Ch. 03)
3.	Rocket Scooter	_____	**C.** Well-covered versus limited-evidence concepts in the year-one index (Ch. 00)
4.	Thick / thin topic	_____	**D.** Platform field holding today’s RI per instrument (Ch. 02)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ VARIS flanks are half and full risk intervals, not standard-deviation bands.

2. _____ Chapter 02 says to invent overnight levels if they are late at the bell.

3. _____ **Setup:** Your VARIS bands do not match a streamer's bands. Checking VWAP overnight handling is a sensible first step.

4. _____ **Setup:** Your confluence tools are offline. Chapter 01 says the only correct choice is to sit out because VWAP cannot be used.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. VWAP plus or minus RI is the same principle as _____ bands, but dynamic.

2. To find the RI table, click the _____ at the bottom of the platform.

3. In Chapter 01 the platform publishes numbers; the _____ is how you wait, filter, and size.

4. Captions often mishear VARIS as "varus," "various," or "_____."

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which is a live use of VWAP from Chapter 03?

A. Stop reference a little beyond VWAP

B. Calculating margin

C. Publishing the RI number

D. Setting the new-week half-gap

2. What does the platform publish beside RI?

A. Option chains

B. A list of trades to take

C. Prop-firm scores

D. DD columns and bands

3. Which is a strong year-one topic?

A. VWAP plus RI and VARIS

B. Open-drive theory

C. Micros-only setup

D. Formal prop compliance

4. Setup: You are journaling price for one hour using only VWAP. Which four states do you record?

A. Open, high, low, close

B. Above, below, reclaim, lose

C. Buy, sell, hold, exit

D. Fill, float, fail, flat

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how VWAP (Ch. 03) and the RI number from the platform (Ch. 02) combine to make VARIS.

2. Compare what the platform gives you (Ch. 01, 02) with what you must decide yourself.

3. Why does the textbook warn so often about using fresh numbers and refreshed levels?

4. Explain why “VWAP alone is not the whole trade” fits the Chapter 01 idea of confluence.

05 — Gap-Fill

Learning objectives

- Define gap-fill as return toward the prior-close / gap reference.
- Relate resilience framing to gap-fill pressure without treating it as destiny.
- Contrast gap-fill scalp vs main-plan fill across live habits.
- Explain why index divergence (ES vs NQ) matters for fill trades.
- State the limit: gap-fill is important, but not the whole of index value.
- Say which gap you are marking (equities gap vs futures reopen gap) before choosing a fill target.

Main teaching

Definition

Gap-fill means price returning toward the **prior close** (or the relevant gap reference) so that the opening gap is closed. Matt trades gap-fill sometimes as a **small scalp**, sometimes as the **main plan**, depending on confluence and the wider day story.

Half-gap (Ch. 04) sits halfway; full fill completes the trip back to the prior close.

Which gap? Equities vs futures

A stream explanation (2026-09-09) separates two kinds of gap, and the difference matters when you pick a fill target:

- A **futures gap** exists whenever the futures market shuts down and reopens (Globex closes, then opens again an hour later). The host notes that CME

runs a calculation that sets where the market reopens, and that a futures gap can fill by returning to the price you started at.

- The **equities gap** is what is meant by “gap fill” in resilience talk and the Rocket Scooter indicators: where the stock market closed (about 4:00 p.m. Eastern) versus where it opened (9:30 Eastern). The host draws a line on the futures chart at those same two moments.

Student rule: before you mark a fill target, write down which gap you mean.
Watch clip: Cn6-5A1ztUM at 4797 (below).

Common live patterns

Across the year:

- Attempt a **gap-fill scalp** when the story supports it
- **Resilience as a “gap-fill predictor.”** Matt calls resilience “my gap fill predictor” and says that without it (and without knowing his liquidity pockets) he is “operating blind.” Resilience also works as a polarity read: above zero points up, below zero points down (see the polarity clip below).
- **Direction check (study caution).** Because the sign of resilience is a direction, whether it favors a fill depends on where price sits relative to the gap. In the 2025-11 clip, resilience had turned positive and Matt said the open “could go up to fill the gap all the way,” and the S&P then did. In the 2025-10 clip (Ch. 04), negative resilience came with strong half-gap resistance and an expected harder flush. Read together, the clips link *both* signs to fill talk depending on context, and the captions never state one sign rule. The earlier shorthand “negative resilience = fill pressure” is therefore a rough summary, not a law. Confirm direction on your own chart before leaning on it.

- Price can hold or fail at gap-fill levels; the live examples show both outcomes (the chapter makes no hit-rate claim)
- **ES vs NQ can disagree** (one fills, one doesn't)
- Gap-fill is important — but "there's more to index value than just the gap-fill arbitrage"

Practical marks

1. Prior day close (fill target)
2. Session / Globex open
3. Half-gap midpoint
4. Nearest rocket / MHP / DD / VWAP if they sit near the gap path

Then ask whether fill is the plan, a partial objective, or a trap if confluence disagrees.

Linking to entries and risk

- Targets: gap-fill often appears as the intended trade objective after a VWAP break / retest short or a resilience-led open plan
- Size: weak confluence → small or skip even if the geometric fill looks "obvious"
- Sister reads: overnight context (Ch. 12), ARB/resilience (Ch. 13), entries (Ch. 10)

Big gaps (a newer technique, one clip)

On 2025-10-27 Matt described a newer technique for a big gap up that does not fill: the prior close can be treated like a yellow line, and the half-gap between close and open can be treated like a red line. He called it "a newer development that's not in the videos." This is a single clip. Do not build a system on it.

Evidence note

`gap-fill` has ~1,151 index hits, but hits count mentions, not lessons. The structured teaching in this chapter rests on a handful of clips (definition, resilience link, ES/NQ split, live examples). Treat the details as habits Matt shows, not as a rulebook.

What this chapter is not

This is not a claim that every gap fills. It is a synthesis of how Matt *talks and trades* gap-fill when the day's evidence lines up.

Key terms

- **Gap-fill** — Return of price toward prior close / gap reference, closing the opening gap.
- **Gap-fill scalp** — Small, structure-based attempt to capture fill without needing a full-session plan.
- **Gap-fill predictor framing** — On-stream name for resilience ("my gap fill predictor"); a polarity read, not a guarantee.
- **Index divergence** — One index fills while another holds — compare before sizing.
- **Equities gap vs futures gap** — Equities gap: ~4:00 p.m. ET close to 9:30 open. Futures gap: Globex close to Globex reopen. "Gap fill" in resilience talk is the equities gap.
- **Polarity (resilience)** — Above zero points up, below zero points down; whether that favors a fill depends on where price sits relative to the gap (study caution).

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-gap-fill.txt
- Half-gap lecture: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt
- Half-gap hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-half-gap.txt
- Book search Gap-fill: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt
- Risk management: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-management.txt
- Lookup index: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Resilience as gap-fill predictor + liquidity (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QwwTcGI8o6w&t=3191
- Gap-fill important; more to index value than gap arb alone (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k968_z06UvA&t=8706
- S&P filled its gap; supporting open could fill further (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6ko754NPwD8&t=12740
- Gap-fill scalp attempt framing (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=3946
- Broke VWAP, shorted retest, out near gap-fill (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=68Rk8Ei-7pc&t=1837
- Gap-fill as intended trade objective (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=5098
- MNQ hit gap-fill, ENQ did not (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=7326

- Equities gap fill vs futures gap — which gap Matt means (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Cn6-5A1ztUM&t=4797
- Resilience polarity — above / below zero sets the leg direction (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dAVR6wjH-vU&t=12961
- Big-gap technique: treat prior close like a yellow line, half-gap like a red line (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3pEBtgNNbkM&t=5494

Chapter summary

- Gap-fill is return toward prior close; half-gap is the midpoint along that path.
- Resilience is called a gap-fill predictor and acts as a direction read (above zero up, below zero down); it is not a guarantee, and price location relative to the gap matters.
- Say which gap you mean: equities (4:00 p.m. close to 9:30 open) or futures (Globex reopen).
- Fills appear as scalps or main plans depending on confluence.
- ES/NQ disagreement is common; wait or size down when indexes split.
- Matt notes gap-fill matters but is not the whole of index value.
- Mark prior close, open, half-gap, and nearby rocket/DD/VWAP before deciding.
- In one live example (2026-09-09) the exit near the fill followed a VWAP break and retest.
- Big-gap technique (prior close like a yellow line) rests on one clip — treat as limited evidence.

Questions to think about

1. When would you treat gap-fill as a scalp objective rather than the day's main plan?
2. If resilience points away from the fill but ARB is supportive, how do you adjudicate a fill trade from the open?
3. Why is "obvious geometry" alone a weak reason to size up a fill trade?
4. How should an NQ trader react when MES/ES has already filled and NQ has not?
5. What does Matt's line about "more than gap-fill arbitrage" caution against in student notes?
6. Which gap — equities or futures — are you marking today, and what changes on your chart if you pick the other one?
7. Positive resilience appears after a gap-down open. What does the 2025-11 example suggest, and what would make you doubt it?

Chapter Test

Chapter 05: Gap-Fill

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Gap-fill	_____	**A.** One index fills while another holds; compare before sizing
2.	Gap-fill scalp	_____	**B.** Fill used as the day's main plan when confluence and the wider story support it
3.	Gap-fill predictor framing	_____	**C.** Return of price toward the prior close or gap reference, closing the opening gap
4.	Index divergence	_____	**D.** Treat the prior close like a yellow line and the half-gap like a red line (one clip)

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Equities gap	_____	**E.** Matt's on-stream name for resilience; a polarity read, not a guarantee
6.	Futures gap	_____	**F.** Above zero points up, below zero points down
7.	Polarity (resilience)	_____	**G.** Counts of mentions, not lessons
8.	Big-gap technique	_____	**H.** Small, structure-based attempt to capture the fill without a full-session plan
9.	Index hits	_____	**I.** About 4:00 p.m. Eastern close to the 9:30 Eastern open
10.	Main-plan fill	_____	**J.** Gap created when Globex closes and reopens about an hour later

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Gap-fill means price returning toward the prior close so that the opening gap is closed.

2. _____ The futures gap is what resilience talk means by "gap fill."

3. _____ Matt calls resilience "my gap fill predictor."

4. _____ Chapter 05 states a firm rule that negative resilience always means fill pressure.

5. _____ ES and NQ can disagree: one fills while the other does not.

6. _____ Chapter 05 claims that every gap fills.

7. _____ Matt said “there’s more to index value than just the gap-fill arbitrage.”

8. _____ The big-gap technique is backed by many clips and can be traded as a system.

9. _____ **Setup:** The geometric fill looks obvious, but confluence is weak. Chapter 05 says to size up because geometry is enough.

10. _____ **Setup:** You are about to mark a fill target and are not sure which gap you mean. Chapter 05 says to write down which gap you mean first.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Gap-fill means price returning toward the _____ close.

2. Half-gap sits halfway; full fill completes the trip back to the prior _____.

3. The equities gap runs from about 4:00 p.m. Eastern close to the _____ Eastern open.

4. A futures gap exists whenever the futures market shuts down and _____.

5. CME runs a _____ that sets where the futures market reopens.

6. Without resilience, Matt says he is “operating _____.”

7. Resilience above zero points _____; below zero points down.

8. In the big-gap technique, the half-gap can be treated like a _____ line.

9. Gap-fill has about 1,151 index hits, but hits count _____, not lessons.

10. When indexes split on a fill, _____ or size down.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What does gap-fill mean in Chapter 05?

A. Price returning toward the prior close or relevant gap reference

B. A new high for the day

C. VWAP crossing a band

D. Price moving away from the open forever

2. Which gap is meant by “gap fill” in resilience talk?

A. The equities gap

B. The futures reopen gap

C. The new-week half-gap

D. The VARIS gap

3. Why does the book call “negative resilience equals fill pressure” a rough summary?

A. The captions state one clear sign rule

B. Resilience only works on gold

C. Resilience is never used

D. Whether a sign favors a fill depends on where price sits relative to the gap

4. What did Matt say about gap-fill and index value?

A. Gap-fill is the only thing that matters

B. Gap-fill never matters

C. Index value is fixed

D. There is more to index value than just the gap-fill arbitrage

5. Which marks does the chapter list as practical marks?

A. Only VWAP

B. Only the weekly close

C. Prior close, session or Globex open, half-gap, nearest rocket, MHP, DD, or VWAP

D. Only the overnight high

6. How does Chapter 05 describe the big-gap technique from 2025-10-27?

A. A core rule taught all year

B. A way to compute RI

C. A newer development from one clip that you should not build a system on

D. A prop-firm requirement

7. What does the chapter say about hit rates for gap-fill holds and fails?

A. Live examples show both outcomes, and the chapter makes no hit-rate claim

B. Fills never work

C. Fills work 90% of the time

D. Fills work only on Fridays

8. Setup: In a 2025-11 clip resilience had turned positive and Matt said the open could go up to fill the gap all the way. What kind of gap must that have been for a fill to mean going up?

A. A gap up, with the prior close below price

B. A gap down, with the prior close above price

C. No gap at all

D. A futures reopen gap only

9. Setup: ES filled its gap twenty minutes ago and NQ has not. What does Chapter 05 suggest?

A. Trade both at full size

B. Assume NQ must fill immediately and size up

C. Ignore ES

D. Treat the split as index divergence; wait or size down

10. Setup: After a VWAP break and retest short, what does the chapter say often appears as the intended objective?

A. The 2x outer band every time

B. Gap-fill

C. No target at all

D. A new all-time high

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the difference between the equities gap and the futures gap, and why it matters when you mark a fill target.

2. Explain how resilience relates to gap-fill and why the chapter adds a direction caution.

3. Compare a gap-fill scalp with a main-plan fill. What decides between them?

4. Why should you not build a system on the big-gap technique or on raw index hits?

5. A friend says “every gap fills, so I always trade the fill.” Use Chapter 05 to respond.

6. When would you treat gap-fill as a scalp objective rather than the day's main plan?

7. How should an NQ trader react when ES has already filled and NQ has not?

8. Positive resilience appears after a gap-down open. What does the 2025-11 example suggest, and what would make you doubt it?

9. Describe the practical marks for a gap-fill day and the question you ask after marking them.

10. Explain how gap-fill links to entries and risk in Chapter 05.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 05: Gap-Fill

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 04.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Float at half-gap	_____	**A.** Overnight HV and HP lines that must refresh before you invent marks (Ch. 02)
2.	Containment	_____	**B.** Simplified overnight to late-day pattern of habits, not a rigid checklist (Ch. 01)
3.	Overnight / dynamic levels	_____	**C.** Hold or build language when confluence supports staying at the midpoint (Ch. 04)

No.	Term	Answer	Description
4.	Day-shape	_____	**D.** Price tending to respect VWAP plus or minus RI or DD distances (Ch. 03)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ The new-week half-gap is built from Friday's close and Sunday's open.

2. _____ VWAP flanks in this playbook are standard-deviation bands.

3. _____ **Setup:** Price taps half-gap with no confluence. Chapter 04 says size down or skip.

4. _____ **Setup:** Your VWAP setting includes overnight data and a friend's does not. Chapter 03 says your VARIS bands must still match exactly.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. At half-gap, ask: fill, float, or _____?

2. VWAP is the magnet and the bias _____.

3. If overnight levels are late at the bell, _____ rather than invent them.

4. The public study shelf website for this textbook is _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which is a use of half-gap on stream?

A. Anchoring VARIS at 6:00 p.m.

B. Support or resistance, a target, or a confluence anchor

C. Setting the RI number

D. Replacing VWAP

2. What does Chapter 03 say about targets?

A. They are set by the broker

B. They are never marked

C. They are often the next VARIS band, half-gap, or rocket level, not VWAP alone

D. They are always VWAP

3. Which path does Chapter 02 give for setup help?

A. Email the CME

B. Call a prop firm

C. Discord platform setup, then tech support

D. Read the captions

4. Setup: Positive resilience shows while price sits at half-gap. Which story does Chapter 04 say often appears?

A. Float or build at half-gap

B. A reason to switch instruments

C. An automatic gap-fill to the prior close

D. A reason to ignore all levels

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how VWAP (Ch. 03) and half-gap (Ch. 04) can be stacked into a stronger read.

2. Explain the minimum you can trade when tools are down, using Chapters 01 and 04.

3. Explain why session settings (Ch. 03) and platform refresh (Ch. 02) both matter before comparing your chart with a streamer.

4. Describe how the front matter's honesty about evidence connects with the caution about ES and NQ disagreeing at half-gap.

06 — Risk Interval (RI)

Learning objectives

- Define risk interval using CME margin-style framing (not standard deviation).
- Explain why RI is per-instrument and day-specific.
- Contrast RI's role as a distance unit with DD's static pivots.
- Locate today's RI on the platform and refuse fixed "default" numbers from memory.
- Relate one-full-RI moves to margin-stress teaching language on stream.

Main teaching

Definition

Risk interval (RI) is a Rocket Scooter number derived from **CME margin-requirement style math**, refreshed from prior-day / end-of-day data. Teaching framing on stream:

- Move about **one full RI** from a reference and you approach the kind of distance associated with **margin stress / margin-call risk** for positions anchored at that reference
- Each instrument has its **own** RI (NQ / MNQ, ES / MES, gold, etc.)
- RI is **not** a standard-deviation band
- Matt has described reverse-engineering CME SPAN years back as part of building RI. On one stream he dates it to 2015 and calls it the first technique he created for the boot camp

Static: set from the prior close

A stream host's plain-language version (2026-09-02): risk intervals are "based on the previous day's close price." The *static* RI is one price distance above and one below that reference, and the number is calculated at the end of the market close. CME updates its margin requirements at the end of every day and publishes how it calculates them. Rocket Scooter takes that margin calculation and produces a risk interval. If someone were long or short from the close and price approached that level, they would be at risk of a margin call. Those static levels are the **DD bands**. The **dynamic** version of the same idea, anchored on VWAP, is the VARIS band (Ch. 07).

Numbers are not fixed forever

Pull today's value from the platform. Callouts heard on stream drift from day to day:

Source (upload date, UTC)	NQ / MNQ	ES / MES
Stream, 2026-06-24	—	68.75
Stream, 2026-09-03	288.75	71.25
Stream, 2026-09-08	290.75	71.5
Stream, 2026-09-09	290.5	—
Stream, 2026-09-17	288	—
Stream, 2026-09-18	288	70.75
VerbonZone ops notes, 2026-09-27 (Brad's platform read)	297.5	72

Source (upload date, UTC)	NQ / MNQ	ES / MES
VerbonZone ops notes, 2026-09-29 (Brad's platform read)	296	71.75

Those are *example days*, not permanent defaults (and **not** a "MES = 288" rule). Between September 3 and September 27 the NQ number moved by nearly nine points in these examples. That is why the rule is "pull it fresh."

RI as a unit of distance

Once you have today's RI:

- **Half RI** and **full RI** become the building blocks of VARIS bands around VWAP (Ch. 07)
- **DD bands** use static RI-based daily pivots from platform math
- Catalysts that move more than one RI are discussed as unusually large relative to that day's margin distance

How to get the number

1. Open Rocket Scooter → expand bottom table → read **RARI / RI** (Ch. 02).
2. Confirm the instrument row (do not mix NQ's RI into an ES chart).
3. Refresh after the platform rolls new data.
4. Plot distances from VWAP or from static DD anchors as your method requires.

Strength of evidence

The *definition* of RI is one of the **strongest** year-one topics (`risk-interval` ~985 hits). Exact third-party Interval Lab install steps are lighter — platform RI + VWAP math is enough to practice the idea.

Key terms

- **Risk interval (RI)** — Per-instrument, day-refreshed distance from CME-margin-style math; not a std-dev.
- **RARI** — Platform column label for risk-interval numbers.
- **Margin-stress framing** — Teaching that ~1 RI from a reference approaches margin-call-class distance.
- **Day example numbers** — Stream callouts like NQ~288 / ES~70 that must not be frozen as defaults.
- **Static RI (DD)** — One RI above and below the prior close, set at the end of the session from CME margin data; the stream phrase is “based on the previous day’s close.”
- **Catalyst** — Matt’s word for a sudden-event move of more than one risk interval.

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-interval.txt
- VARIS hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-varis-bands.txt
- Platform hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-platform-setup.txt
- Operations notes with dated RI readings: https://verbonzone.com/ops.txt

- Book search Risk interval: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- RI origin — reverse engineered CME SPAN (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GlDw0b6xhgc&t=10908
- PD / RI band based on margin requirements (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UyNBjRndInk&t=11559
- Catalyst > one RI; RI decided by CME calculation (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FLTmpqPqB3E&t=11603
- What risk intervals are — prior close, CME margins, DD bands (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=x_BwvN1-FMM&t=16643
- 288 RI example derived from CME margin data (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=YH3MWFJzoOk&t=17462
- Not std-devs — RI from CME (MNQ example) (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=kbUv8TdMoM0&t=15606
- Example RI callouts MNQ / MES (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=1025
- Static RI from the prior close; CME updates margins daily; DD bands vs VARIS (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=x_BwvN1-FMM&t=16675
- Full RI move ≈ where traders get margin called (MNQ example, RI 290) (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zQjzHZNRiW0&t=6187
- Example RI callout, ES 68.75 (2026-06): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QNMgGHfFzaQ&t=23383
- Example RI callout, NQ/MNQ 290.5 (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=68Rk8Ei-7pc&t=3654

- Example RI callouts, ENQ 288 / ES 70.75 / gold 29.8 (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=g4t9rmrjM8U&t=12540
- “Reverse engineered CME SPAN … in 2015” (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GlDw0b6xhgc&t=10908

Chapter summary

- RI is CME-margin-style distance per instrument, refreshed from platform data.
- It is not a Bollinger / std-dev construct.
- One full RI from a reference is taught with margin-stress language.
- Example stream numbers (NQ~288–297, ES~69–72 across mid-2026 callouts) are day samples only.
- Static RI is set from the prior close; the dynamic version is anchored on VWAP.
- RI is the unit that builds VARIS (±0.5 / ±1.0 / optional ±2.0) and informs DD.
- Always pull today’s RARI/RI column; never hard-code memory defaults.
- Definition evidence is thick; install pedantry is thinner.

Questions to think about

1. Why is copying yesterday’s RI onto today’s chart a methodological error?
2. How would you explain RI to someone who only knows Bollinger Bands?
3. If NQ RI is ~288 and ES RI is ~71 on the same day, what mistakes does that prevent?
4. What does a move larger than one RI suggest in Matt’s catalyst language?

5. Where exactly on the platform do you verify the number before plotting VARIS?
6. The NQ RI was nearly nine points higher in late September than at the start of the month in the examples. What does that do to a chart that still has an old number typed in?

Chapter Test

Chapter 06: Risk Interval (RI)

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Risk interval (RI)	_____	**A.** The same idea anchored on VWAP: the VARIS band
2.	RARI	_____	**B.** Stream callouts like NQ about 288 that must not be frozen as defaults
3.	Margin-stress framing	_____	**C.** Matt’s word for a sudden-event move of more than one risk interval
4.	Day example numbers	_____	**D.** Building blocks of VARIS bands around VWAP
5.	Static RI (DD)	_____	**E.** Platform column label for risk-interval numbers

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	Catalyst	_____	**F.** Margin system Matt described reverse-engineering years back to build RI
7.	Dynamic RI	_____	**G.** Teaching that about one RI from a reference approaches margin-call-class distance
8.	CME SPAN	_____	**H.** Third-party tool whose install steps are lighter in the corpus; platform RI plus VWAP math is enough to practice
9.	Half RI and full RI	_____	**I.** One RI above and below the prior close, set at the end of the session
10.	Interval Lab	_____	**J.** Per-instrument, day-refreshed distance from CME-margin-style math; not a standard deviation

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Risk interval is derived from CME margin-requirement style math.

2. _____ RI is a standard-deviation band.

3. _____ Each instrument has its own RI.

4. _____ MES uses an RI of 288.

5. _____ Static RI levels are the DD bands.

6. _____ The static RI is calculated at the start of the morning session from the open price.

7. _____ On one stream Matt dates his reverse-engineering of CME SPAN to 2015 and calls it the first technique he created for the boot camp.

8. _____ Between September 3 and September 27 the example NQ RI stayed exactly the same.

9. _____ **Setup:** You trade both NQ and ES today. Using NQ's RI on your ES chart would be a mistake under Chapter 06.

10. _____ **Setup:** A sudden news event moves price more than one full RI. Chapter 06 says that move is small and ordinary relative to that day's margin distance.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. RI is derived from CME _____-requirement style math.

2. Moving about one full RI from a reference approaches _____-call risk.

3. RI is refreshed from prior-day or _____-of-day data.

4. The static RI is "based on the previous day's _____ price."

5. CME updates its margin requirements at the end of every _____.

6. The static RI levels are the _____ bands.

7. The dynamic version of RI, anchored on VWAP, is the _____ band.

8. Matt calls a sudden-event move of more than one RI a _____.

9. The rule for RI numbers is "pull it _____."

10. When plotting, do not mix NQ's RI into an _____ chart.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is RI derived from?

A. Yesterday’s volume profile

B. CME margin-requirement style math

C. A moving average crossover

D. A 20-period standard deviation

2. Which statement about RI and instruments is correct?

A. RI exists only for gold

B. One RI fits all instruments

C. RI is the same for NQ and ES

D. Each instrument has its own RI

3. What do the stream RI numbers in the chapter’s table represent?

A. Prop-firm limits

B. Example days, not permanent defaults

C. Fixed defaults for all time

D. Standard deviations

4. Which tool is the dynamic version of the RI idea, anchored on VWAP?

A. MHP

B. DD bands

C. VARIS bands

D. Half-gap

5. What is the first step of “How to get the number”?

A. Compute it from Bollinger Bands

B. Open Rocket Scooter, expand the bottom table, read RARI / RI

C. Copy it from the chapter’s table

D. Ask in chat for yesterday’s number

6. Which index topic count shows RI’s definition is one of the strongest topics?

A. About 985 risk-interval hits

B. About 54 hits

C. About 30 hits

D. About 34 hits

7. Which numbers in the chapter’s table came from VerbonZone ops notes (Brad’s platform read) on 2026-09-27?

A. ES 68.75 only

B. NQ 290.5 only

C. NQ / MNQ 297.5 and ES / MES 72

D. NQ 288 and ES 70.75

8. Setup: Your chart still has an NQ RI typed in from early September, and today the platform shows a number almost nine points higher. What is the problem?

A. Your bands are drawn from a stale number and sit in the wrong places

B. You should average the two numbers

C. The platform is wrong and you should ignore it

D. Nothing; old numbers are fine

9. Setup: Someone is long from the prior close and price moves about one full RI against them. In the chapter's framing, what are they approaching?

A. A guaranteed reversal

B. The half-gap

C. A new RI

D. Margin-call risk

10. Setup: The platform rolls new data after you plotted. What does the procedure say to do?

A. Refresh and re-read the RI, confirming the instrument row

B. Keep the morning number

C. Switch to a standard deviation

D. Delete VWAP

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Define risk interval and explain why it is not a standard deviation.

2. Explain the static RI as the stream host described it on 2026-09-02, and connect it to DD and VARIS.

3. Why does the chapter insist on pulling RI fresh every day?

4. Describe RI as a unit of distance and list what it builds.

5. Walk through the four-step procedure for getting and using today's RI, and explain the purpose of each step.

6. Why is copying yesterday's RI onto today's chart a methodological error?

7. How would you explain RI to someone who only knows Bollinger Bands?

8. If NQ RI is about 288 and ES RI is about 71 on the same day, what mistakes does that prevent?

9. What does a move larger than one RI suggest in Matt’s catalyst language?

10. Explain why the chapter says definition evidence is thick but install pedantry is thinner, and what you should practice.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 06: Risk Interval (RI)

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 05.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Equities gap vs futures gap	_____	**A.** Trading half-gaps and yellows without the full confluence stack (Ch. 04)
2.	Pure S/R	_____	**B.** 4:00 p.m. to 9:30 cash gap versus Globex close-to-reopen gap (Ch. 05)
3.	Session / overnight handling	_____	**C.** Opens the RI and DD table on the platform (Ch. 02)
4.	Carrot / expand control	_____	**D.** Whether overnight volume is included in VWAP (Ch. 03)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Matt calls resilience “my gap fill predictor.”

2. _____ The new-week half-gap is built from Monday’s close and Tuesday’s open.

3. _____ **Setup:** ES and NQ disagree on whether the gap filled. Chapters 04 and 05 both say to compare indexes and wait or size down.

4. _____ **Setup:** Your confluence grade is weak but the gap geometry looks perfect. Chapter 05 says geometry alone justifies full size.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Gap-fill returns price toward the prior _____.

2. The textbook’s phrase for VWAP’s role is the line of _____.

3. Static structures such as _____ and RI from the prior close still exist when overnight lines are late.

4. Rocket Scooter is a platform plus a _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which gap does resilience talk mean by “gap fill”?

A. The VARIS gap

B. The overnight high-low range

C. The futures reopen gap

D. The equities gap

2. Which is a common live use of VWAP?

A. A replacement for RI

B. A bias hinge and stop reference

C. A source of DD bands

D. A prop rule

3. What is the half-gap?

A. Midpoint between the prior session close and today’s open

B. Half of one RI

C. The overnight low

D. Midpoint between two VARIS bands

4. Setup: Price is at half-gap, resilience is negative, and confluence is thin. What reading fits Chapters 04 and 05?

A. Assume the gap is already filled

B. Ignore resilience completely

C. Buy full size because half-gap always holds

D. Treat half-gap more carefully as resistance or fill fuel, size small or skip

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how half-gap (Ch. 04) and gap-fill (Ch. 05) relate in gap structure.

2. Explain why the textbook asks you to say which gap you are marking, and connect this to session settings for VWAP.

3. How do resilience and ARB appear in Chapters 04 and 05?

4. Using Chapters 01 and 05, explain why confluence, not geometry, should set your size.

07 — VARIS Bands (VWAP ± RI)

Learning objectives

- Define VARIS as dynamic risk-interval distances around VWAP.
- Contrast VARIS (dynamic) with DD bands (static).
- Map inner (~0.5 RI) and outer (~1.0 RI) bands, plus optional 2× extension.
- Explain Honda (band-to-band) and retirement / outer-to-outer language.
- Apply live habits: respect stretch, reclaim inner, stack with other structure.
- Describe the VWAP session anchor (6:00 p.m. Globex open vs 9:30 New York) and why charts differ.
- Report host *day-example* management of an inner-band trade without turning it into a rulebook.

Main teaching

ASR note

Captions often say **“varus / various / Varys.”** The concept is **VARIS** (community VWAP ± RI bands). Prose here uses **VARIS**; Watch links still land on the same clips.

Definition

VARIS bands are **dynamic** risk-interval distances centered on **VWAP**. They move with the session’s volume-weighted mean, unlike **DD bands**, which are **static** RI pivots from daily / close-based Rocket Scooter math.

Matt / hosts: *“DD bands are static risk intervals. The VARIS bands are dynamic risk intervals based around VWAP.”*

Tool	Type	Anchor
DD bands	Static RI pivots	Daily / close-based platform math
VARIS bands	Dynamic RI distances	**VWAP** (moves with the session)

Band map

- **Inner band** ≈ **half** RI from VWAP (±0.5)
- **Outer band** ≈ **full** RI from VWAP (±1.0)
- Optional **2×** outer for extension / “retirement” style runs

A host’s summary of the geometry (2026-09-02): the inner band is half a risk interval from VWAP, the outer band is one full risk interval, and the lowest/highest is two risk intervals. He has also said that one full risk interval is generally where traders are getting margin called.

Band-to-band trades (Honda / retirement language)

Community shorthand heard on stream:

- **Honda trade** — one band to the next (VWAP → inner, inner → outer, etc.)
- **Retirement / bigger run** — outer toward opposite outer (full RI-class move)
- Also heard: the zone ladder. One zone to the next is a **Honda**, two zones is a **Lambo**, three zones is a **yacht**, four zones is a **retirement** trade (2026-09-11). Outer-to-outer is four zones, which is consistent with the earlier “retirement” definition.

How to plot

1. Read today’s RI from Rocket Scooter (Ch. 02, Ch. 06).
2. Plot VWAP with known overnight handling (Ch. 03).

3. Plot ±0.5 RI (inner) and ±1.0 RI (outer); add ±2.0 if you use extension.
4. Interval Lab / community tools were mentioned as helpers — they still need the RI number.

Session anchor

On stream the VARIS band was described as calculated from the session open. When the 6:00 p.m. session starts, VWAP adjusts to the new price and VARIS adjusts to VWAP, so VWAP is anchored at 6:00 p.m.; you can anchor it to the New York 9:30 session instead (2026-08-25). A different clip (2026-09-18) has a host explain that his VWAP resets at the start of the session while other platforms exclude closed-market time, and that you can change the session start in settings. Two charts that show different bands are often using different anchors.

Live usage habits

- Respect **outer** as stretched; a host says the market likes to revert to VWAP from a risk interval (2026-06).
- On containment: the host says that if price falls below the lower band and keeps falling he trades smaller than when price is inside the range (2026-08).
- Stack VARIS with rocket levels / half-gap for confluence.
- Size down when price is slicing through bands without reaction.

Day examples of inner-band management (not rules)

These come from stream hosts describing their own trades, often on gold and oil, mostly on evening streams. The captions do not name the speaker, so the book does not attribute them to Matt specifically:

- First target about **halfway** through the first VARIS zone; sometimes VWAP (2026-09-14).
- Invalidation: a **five-minute candle close** outside the inner band, then wait for a retest from the other side and exit for a small loss. Wicks alone do not invalidate it (2026-09-18).
- Preference: one host likes long **reclaims** of VARIS and does not like shorting the upper band as an entry (2026-07-08).
- He has said the inner lines are new for VARIS 3.0 (2026-09-16). Earlier streams already mention inner bands, so the version history is unclear.

Each is one host's description on one day. They show how band management can sound; they do not replace your own stop plan.

Evidence note

`varis-bands` has fewer raw hits than `risk-interval`, but the definition and the Honda language are solid across months. The community tool is called Interval Lab; it still needs the RI number, and exact install steps are lighter than the concept. A Discord back-test tally for VARIS ("40 point reclaim seems to be the best setup") was mentioned on 2026-09-18, but its data is not shown in the corpus. Treat it as unverified.

Key terms

- **VARIS** — Dynamic RI bands around VWAP (ASR often mishears as varus/various/Varys).

- **Inner / outer** — ~Half RI / full RI from VWAP (±0.5 / ±1.0).
- **Honda** — Band-to-band trade from one VARIS level to the next.
- **Retirement trade** — Larger outer-to-outer / full-RI-class ambition in community language.
- **DD vs VARIS** — Static daily RI pivots vs dynamic VWAP-centered RI distances.
- **Lambo / yacht** — Two-zone and three-zone VARIS trades on the same ladder as Honda (one zone) and retirement (four zones).
- **Session anchor** — The start time VWAP (and therefore VARIS) is calculated from, e.g. 6:00 p.m. Globex open or 9:30 New York.
- **Interval Lab** — Community tool for plotting VARIS bands; needs today's RI from Rocket Scooter.

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-varis-bands.txt
- RI hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-interval.txt
- VWAP hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-vwap.txt
- Book search VARIS: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- VARIS zone vs DD — dynamic RI around VWAP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oNr7tlCHCpY&t=13143
- Varys = VWAP + RI up/down (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Zl_Ritw-Hdg&t=3373

- Varys flanks = half risk intervals, not std-dev (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1U4ZCJkks2I&t=1433
- Orange VWAP + green RI distances; half / one / two (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pi7Xsc38r_Q&t=3992
- RI lines — half, full, two RI from VWAP (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zQjzHZNRiW0&t=6156
- Honda = band to band; retirement = outer to outer (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pSwH1gzky5k&t=7046
- Honda = any VARIS level to the next (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XiaZND6mOsk&t=13389
- Honda → Lambo (2 zones) → yacht (3) → retirement (4) (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XiaZND6mOsk&t=13389
- VARIS anchored to the 6:00 p.m. session open (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pSwH1gzky5k&t=3333
- VWAP resets at session start; you can change session start (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=MCh6kF4GsTg&t=8662
- Static RI vs dynamic VARIS; inner = half RI, outer = one RI, then two (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=x_BwvN1-FMM&t=16675
- First target about halfway through the first VARIS zone (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HaYraAW33rk&t=12386
- Five-minute close outside the inner band invalidates (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=g4t9rmrjM8U&t=12474
- Likes long reclaims of VARIS; not shorting the upper band (2026-07): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LnFz-RTBErk&t=24044
- Inner lines new for VARIS 3.0 (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_6zUByu8sdI&t=6818

- VWAP±RI containment; trades smaller below the band (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=2581

Chapter summary

- VARIS = dynamic RI distances around VWAP; DD = static RI pivots.
- Inner ≈ ±0.5 RI; outer ≈ ±1.0 RI; optional ±2.0 for extension.
- Honda = band-to-band; retirement ≈ outer-to-outer / full-RI-class run.
- Plotting requires today's RI plus correct VWAP session handling.
- Outer stretch invites reaction bias; slicing without reaction → size down.
- Stack VARIS with rocket/half-gap/VWAP side for confluence.
- VWAP session anchor (6:00 p.m. vs 9:30) changes the bands; compare anchors first.
- Management examples (halfway target, five-minute-close invalidation) are host day examples, not rules.
- ASR mislabels are common; trust the RI-around-VWAP definition.

Questions to think about

1. Why can VARIS and DD both be "right" on the same chart at the same time?
2. Sketch a Honda long from VWAP to upper inner — what invalidates it?
3. When would you prefer a retirement-style objective over a Honda scalp?
4. If bands look wrong versus the stream, which two settings do you audit first?
5. How does slicing through outer without reaction change your size rule?

6. The five-minute-close invalidation is one host’s habit on one instrument family. How would you test whether it suits your own chart before adopting it?

Chapter Test

Chapter 07: VARIS Bands (VWAP ± RI)

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	VARIS	_____	**A.** Two-zone VARIS trade
2.	Inner band	_____	**B.** One zone to the next; band-to-band trade
3.	Outer band	_____	**C.** Community tool for plotting VARIS; needs today's RI from Rocket Scooter
4.	Honda	_____	**D.** Four zones; outer toward opposite outer
5.	Lambo	_____	**E.** About half an RI from VWAP (plus or minus 0.5)

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	Yacht	_____	**F.** About one full RI from VWAP (plus or minus 1.0)
7.	Retirement trade	_____	**G.** Three-zone VARIS trade
8.	DD vs VARIS	_____	**H.** Start time VWAP and VARIS are calculated from, such as 6:00 p.m. or 9:30
9.	Session anchor	_____	**I.** Dynamic RI bands around VWAP (captions often mishear it as varus or Varys)
10.	Interval Lab	_____	**J.** Static daily RI pivots versus dynamic VWAP-centered RI distances

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ VARIS bands are dynamic and move with VWAP, while DD bands are static.

2. _____ The inner band is one full RI from VWAP.

3. _____ On the zone ladder, two zones is called a Lambo.

4. _____ Interval Lab can plot VARIS correctly without the day’s RI number.

5. _____ On stream, VWAP was described as anchored at the 6:00 p.m. session open, with the option to anchor it to 9:30 New York instead.

6. _____ The Discord back-test result that a “40 point reclaim seems to be the best setup” is verified in the corpus.

7. _____ The five-minute-close invalidation is one host’s day example, not a rule.

8. _____ Wicks outside the inner band invalidate the host’s inner-band trade.

9. _____ **Setup:** Price has stretched to the outer band. A host says the market likes to revert to VWAP from a risk interval, so the outer band is treated as stretched.

10. _____ **Setup:** Price falls below the lower band and keeps falling. The host says he trades larger than when price is inside the range.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. VARIS bands are centered on _____.

2. The inner band is about _____ RI from VWAP.

3. The outer band is about _____ RI from VWAP.

4. A one-zone trade is a _____.

5. A three-zone trade is a _____.

6. Outer-to-outer is _____ zones.

7. A host said one full risk interval is generally where traders are getting margin _____.

8. In a host’s day example, the first target is about _____ through the first VARIS zone.

9. One host likes long _____ of VARIS and does not like shorting the upper band as an entry.

10. Two charts that show different bands are often using different session _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is the difference between VARIS and DD bands?

A. They are the same tool

B. VARIS is dynamic around VWAP; DD is static from daily, close-based math

C. Both are standard-deviation bands

D. VARIS is static; DD is dynamic

2. Where is the optional 2x band used?

A. As the session anchor

B. For extension or retirement-style runs

C. As the RI source

D. As the inner band

3. Which order is the zone ladder?

A. Yacht, Honda, Lambo, retirement

B. Lambo, Honda, retirement, yacht

C. Retirement, yacht, Lambo, Honda

D. Honda, Lambo, yacht, retirement

4. What is the first step in plotting VARIS?

A. Read today’s RI from Rocket Scooter

B. Draw a standard deviation

C. Copy the streamer’s bands

D. Mark the overnight high

5. What did a host say about the inner lines and VARIS 3.0?

A. VARIS 3.0 has no bands

B. Inner lines were removed in VARIS 3.0

C. VARIS 3.0 replaced VWAP

D. He said they are new for VARIS 3.0, but earlier streams mention inner bands, so the version history is unclear

6. Why does the book not attribute the inner-band management examples to Matt specifically?

A. Matt asked not to be named

B. They are invented by the book

C. The captions do not name the speaker

D. They come from a prop firm

7. Which statement fits the evidence note in Chapter 07?

A. VARIS has more raw hits than risk interval

B. Install steps are fully documented

C. The definition and the Honda language are solid across months

D. The back-test data is shown in full

8. Setup: You are long from VWAP aiming at the upper inner band. What kind of trade is this in community language?

A. A Honda

B. A retirement trade

C. A yacht

D. A catalyst

9. Setup: You hold a host-style inner-band trade. A five-minute candle closes outside the inner band against you. What did the host describe doing?

A. Add size immediately

B. Ignore it because only wicks matter

C. Move the stop farther away

D. Wait for a retest from the other side and exit for a small loss

10. Setup: Price is slicing through the bands with no reaction. What does the chapter suggest?

A. Switch to the 2x band as entry

B. Size down

C. Size up

D. Remove VWAP

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Define VARIS bands and contrast them with DD bands.

2. Describe the band map and the zone ladder, and explain how outer-to-outer equals a retirement trade.

3. Explain the session anchor and why two charts can show different bands.

4. Summarize the live usage habits for VARIS.

5. Why does the book present the inner-band management examples as day examples and not rules?

6. Why can VARIS and DD both be “right” on the same chart at the same time?

7. When would you prefer a retirement-style objective over a Honda scalp?

8. If bands look wrong versus the stream, which two settings do you audit first?

9. How does slicing through the outer band without reaction change your size?

10. The five-minute-close invalidation is one host’s habit on one instrument family. How would you test whether it suits your own chart?

Spiral Test

After Chapter 07: VARIS Bands (VWAP ± RI)

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 06.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Catalyst	_____	**A.** YouTube URL that lands near a teaching moment (Ch. 00)
2.	Index divergence	_____	**B.** A sudden-event move of more than one risk interval (Ch. 06)
3.	Gap structure	_____	**C.** One index fills while another holds (Ch. 05)
4.	Watch link	_____	**D.** The space between prior close and open (Ch. 04)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ The static RI is based on the previous day's close and is calculated at the end of the market close.

2. _____ Chapter 05 says the futures gap is the gap meant in resilience talk.

3. _____ **Setup:** You trade ES and NQ. Reading each instrument's own RI row from the platform is required before plotting.

4. _____ **Setup:** A stream once called NQ RI 288, so you type 288 into your chart permanently. Chapter 06 approves.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. The RI column on the platform is labeled _____ / RI.

2. The equities gap runs from about 4:00 p.m. Eastern to _____ Eastern.

3. Positive resilience at half-gap often supports a _____ story.

4. VWAP plus or minus RI is called _____ in Chapter 03.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which statement about RI is correct?

A. It is set by the broker

B. It is a moving average

C. It comes from CME margin-style math and is not a standard deviation

D. It is the same for every instrument

2. What does Matt call resilience?

A. His gap-fill predictor

B. His RI source

C. His session anchor

D. His prop rule

3. What does Chapter 02 say to do when overnight levels are late?

A. Use last week’s lines

B. Wait rather than invent them

C. Close the platform

D. Invent them from memory

4. Setup: Price moved more than one RI after a sudden news event. Which word from Chapter 06 fits?

A. Honda

B. Catalyst

C. Float

D. Containment

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how static RI (Ch. 06) produces DD bands, and how the platform shows them (Ch. 02).

2. Explain why “which gap?” (Ch. 05) and “which instrument row?” (Ch. 06) are similar habits.

3. Using Chapters 03 and 06, explain why VWAP plus or minus RI is not a standard-deviation band.

4. Describe the habits from Chapters 04 and 05 for days when ES and NQ disagree.

08 — Rocket Levels, HV / Volume

Learning objectives

- Explain predicted high-volume (HV) pivots versus classical prior-volume profiles.
- Describe overnight / dynamic rocket levels and alert-based waiting.
- Place DD, MHP, and hedge-pressure lines in the same ecosystem as yellow HV lines.
- Summarize the gamma / dealer-hedge *why* without pretending this is an options course.
- State how confluence upgrades a lone rocket touch.

Main teaching

High-volume pivots (the yellow lines)

Rocket Scooter's headline feature on stream: **predicted high-volume pivots** — often the yellow lines — where Matt expects volume / reaction **before** the session proves it with a classical volume profile.

Teaching contrast he stresses across months:

- Many traders use *previous* volume
- Rocket Scooter aims to **predict where volume will be**, then trade the reaction when price arrives
- Indicators underneath help read whether the approach is bullish or bearish

Overnight / dynamic rocket levels

Hosts often wait for **overnight / dynamic** levels to publish, then draw them. Traders set alerts and trade the touch with a plan. If levels are late, wait (Ch. 02, Ch. 12).

Static structures that sit with HV lines

Same ecosystem:

- **DD bands** — static RI framework
- **MHP / weekly / dynamic hedge pressure** — planned pivots; MHP especially treated as a "big" mechanical level in boot-camp style examples
- RI-based levels (DD bands) are anchored to the **prior close**; the hedge-pressure family comes from options-positioning estimates (see below)

Boot-camp style claims on stream for some MHP-class pivots cite roughly **75%** without confluence vs **~90%** with — treat as *their* backtest claim, not a guarantee.

When the numbers publish

- On 2025-09-18 the speaker said the numbers are published at **5:45 Eastern** before the market starts, then recalculated for the morning and out "right at 9:30."
- "Dynamic" is Rocket Scooter's word for the overnight level, as one host explained it. Because the options market is closed, it is the best overnight estimate of where dealers are positioned before the New York session; at 9:30 new monthly and weekly hedge-pressure levels are calculated from the open-interest data (2026-09-08; Ch. 12).
- The regular-session MHP levels show up on the platform around 9:30 and are described as "really big levels" (2026-07-15).

What “hedge pressure” means as defined on stream

A host defined MHP as monthly hedge pressure, a level “that predicts high volume,” based on the maximum gamma exposure for dealer-hedged options in the futures market. Weekly hedge pressure sits above or below it on the chart (2026-08-31). The blue line is described as a weekly gamma-exposure maximum called hedge pressure (2025-11). These are stream definitions; the underlying calculation is not disclosed (see the limited-disclosure note).

Options / gamma note (as taught)

Across the year Matt ties HV pivots to **gamma exposure / dealer-hedged options** ideas — “mostly,” with more to it. `options-levels` has hundreds of hits, but this is still **not** a full options-chain course. Treat gamma as *why the pivots exist*, not as an options curriculum.

Confluence with rocket levels

A rocket level alone can be traded as S/R. Stronger when paired with:

- VARIS inner/outer
- Half-gap / gap-fill
- VWAP reclaim or reject
- ARB / resilience agreement

Limited disclosure note

`rocket-level` and `volume-hv` are solid on *usage*. Formal HV algorithm disclosure stays thin — by design on stream (server-side indication). Practice: mark overnight yellows + DD/MHP, wait for price, then read confluence.

Key terms

- **Rocket / yellow / HV level** — Predicted high-volume pivot published by Rocket Scooter.
- **Predicted vs prior volume** — RS aims to forecast where volume will appear; classical profiles use history.
- **MHP** — Monthly hedge-pressure line; strong planned pivot in boot-camp examples.
- **Hedge pressure (HP)** — Related pivot family (weekly / dynamic / overnight variants).
- **Gamma / dealer hedge note** — Teaching rationale for HV pivots — not a full options course.
- **Dynamic hedge pressure** — Rocket Scooter's overnight hedge-pressure level; an estimate of dealer positioning while the options market is closed (Ch. 12).
- **EST trade** — Stream label ("every single time") for a trade taken at a strong pivot such as MHP; the 75% without / 90% with confluence claim is the speaker's own framing.

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop rocket: https://verbonzone.com/rs-rocket-level.txt
- Topic hop volume/HV: https://verbonzone.com/rs-volume-hv.txt
- Options levels hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-options-levels.txt
- Overnight hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-overnight-globex.txt
- Book search Rocket / HV: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

- Lookup index: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Orange line = predictable HV pivot (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12118
- Gamma exposure → predictable HV pivot (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nsAg2vkm9-w&t=5487
- Hedge pressure as predictable HV pivot (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c2sXPsMz0os&t=10800
- Predict volume with overnight levels (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=8658
- Yellow HV pivot bounce + brief what RS is (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13734
- Mechanical plan: alert at MHP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XtmZkpckT8Q&t=8878
- MHP odds with vs without confluence (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=s4xX5ygtEtA&t=5645
- Rocket level + VARIS confluence (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j7MTmieukvs&t=7951
- Numbers published 5:45 ET, recalculated for 9:30 (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12129
- What “dynamic” hedge pressure means (overnight estimate) (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=9012
- MHP defined: monthly hedge pressure, max gamma exposure (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1KMwZ9U9t2I&t=12967
- Regular-session MHP levels appear around 9:30 (2026-07): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=i5hezLGxOfA&t=19234

Chapter summary

- Yellow rocket lines are predicted HV pivots, not merely yesterday's volume nodes.
- Wait for overnight/dynamic levels; trade the touch with a plan and alerts.
- DD and MHP/HP sit in the same ecosystem as HV yellows.
- Numbers are published before the session (5:45 ET per Matt in 2025) and refreshed around 9:30; "dynamic" means the overnight estimate.
- Gamma/dealer ideas explain *why*; they are not an options textbook.
- Lone rocket S/R is allowed; confluence upgrades size quality.
- Algorithm disclosure is intentionally thin — practice usage, not reverse engineering.

Questions to think about

1. What is the pedagogical difference between predicting HV and plotting yesterday's volume profile?
2. If MHP arrives without confluence, how should boot-camp odds language affect your size — not your certainty?
3. Why wait rather than invent overnight yellows at the cash bell?
4. Which three confluence partners would you check first at a yellow touch?
5. How should a student take notes on gamma without turning this into options homework?
6. If dynamic hedge pressure is an overnight estimate that is replaced at 9:30, what should you do with an overnight line that was touched before the open?

Chapter Test

Chapter 08: Rocket Levels, HV / Volume

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Rocket / yellow / HV level	_____	**A.** Related pivot family with weekly, dynamic, and overnight variants
2.	Predicted vs prior volume	_____	**B.** Teaching rationale for HV pivots, not a full options course
3.	MHP	_____	**C.** Overnight hedge-pressure estimate made while the options market is closed
4.	Hedge pressure (HP)	_____	**D.** Stream label (“every single time”) for a trade at a strong pivot such as MHP

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Gamma / dealer hedge note	_____	**E.** Set at levels so you can trade the touch with a plan instead of hunting
6.	Dynamic hedge pressure	_____	**F.** The HV algorithm is not disclosed, by design (server-side indication)
7.	EST trade	_____	**G.** Rocket Scooter forecasts where volume will appear; classical profiles use history
8.	Blue line	_____	**H.** Monthly hedge-pressure line; a strong planned pivot in boot-camp examples
9.	Alerts	_____	**I.** Described as a weekly gamma-exposure maximum called hedge pressure
10.	Limited disclosure	_____	**J.** Predicted high-volume pivot published by Rocket Scooter

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Rocket Scooter aims to predict where volume will be before the session proves it.

2. _____ Rocket Scooter’s yellow lines are simply yesterday’s volume nodes.

3. _____ Hosts often wait for overnight or dynamic levels to publish, then draw them.

4. _____ The boot-camp claim of about 75% without and 90% with confluence is a guarantee.

5. _____ "Dynamic" is Rocket Scooter's word for the overnight level, as one host explained it.

6. _____ Chapter 08 is a full options-chain course.

7. _____ Regular-session MHP levels show up on the platform around 9:30 and are described as "really big levels."

8. _____ The formal HV algorithm is fully disclosed on stream.

9. _____ **Setup:** Price touches a yellow line with VARIS, half-gap, and VWAP all agreeing. Chapter 08 says confluence like this upgrades the lone rocket touch.

10. _____ **Setup:** Overnight yellows have not published yet. Chapter 08 says to draw your own estimate so you are ready.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Yellow rocket lines are predicted _____-volume pivots.

2. Many traders use _____ volume; Rocket Scooter aims to predict it.

3. MHP stands for _____ hedge pressure.

4. Weekly hedge pressure sits above or _____ MHP on the chart.

5. MHP is based on the maximum _____ exposure for dealer-hedged options.

6. On 2025-09-18 the speaker said numbers are published at _____ Eastern before the market starts.

7. At 9:30, new monthly and weekly hedge-pressure levels are calculated from the _____ data.

8. RI-based levels such as DD bands are anchored to the _____ close.

9. The stream label EST means “every single _____.”

10. A rocket level alone can be traded as _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is the headline feature of Rocket Scooter on stream?

A. An options chain

B. Predicted high-volume pivots, the yellow lines

C. A news feed

D. A prop dashboard

2. How does predicted HV differ from a classical volume profile?

A. It forecasts where volume will be instead of plotting where it was

B. It uses only yesterday’s close

C. It is a standard deviation

D. It ignores volume

3. Why is the overnight level called “dynamic” in Chapter 08?

A. It moves with VWAP like VARIS

B. It changes every minute with price

C. It is drawn by hand

D. It is the best overnight estimate of dealer positioning while the options market is closed

4. Where does the hedge-pressure family come from, according to the chapter?

A. VWAP

B. The prior close only

C. Options-positioning estimates

D. Prop-firm rules

5. How should you treat gamma in this textbook?

A. As irrelevant

B. As the RI formula

C. As a full options course

D. As why the pivots exist, not as an options curriculum

6. Which practice does the limited-disclosure note recommend?

A. Ignore all yellows

B. Reverse-engineer the algorithm

C. Mark overnight yellows plus DD and MHP, wait for price, then read confluence

D. Trade only options

7. Which is NOT listed as a confluence partner for rocket levels?

A. Half-gap or gap-fill

B. A random social media tip

C. ARB or resilience agreement

D. VARIS inner or outer

8. Setup: MHP arrives on your chart but there is no confluence. How should the boot-camp odds language affect you?

A. Affect size, not certainty; treat the percentages as their claim

B. Guarantee a win at full size

C. Make you skip all MHP trades forever

D. Replace your stop

9. Setup: It is 9:29 and you are trading off an overnight dynamic hedge-pressure line. What happens at 9:30 according to the chapter?

A. The RI is recalculated from VWAP

B. Nothing changes

C. New monthly and weekly hedge-pressure levels are calculated from open-interest data

D. The platform shuts down

10. Setup: Price approaches a yellow line from below and your alert fires. What does the chapter say traders do?

A. Trade the touch with a plan, reading confluence

B. Chase before the touch

C. Remove the line

D. Ignore the alert

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the difference between predicting high volume and plotting yesterday's volume profile.

2. Describe MHP and the hedge-pressure family as defined on stream.

3. Explain when the numbers publish and what “dynamic” means.

4. How should a student treat the boot-camp 75% / 90% claim?

5. Explain how a lone rocket touch is upgraded by confluence.

6. Why wait rather than invent overnight yellows at the cash bell?

7. Which three confluence partners would you check first at a yellow touch, and why?

8. How should a student take notes on gamma without turning this into options homework?

9. If dynamic hedge pressure is an overnight estimate that is replaced at 9:30, what should you do with an overnight line that was touched before the open?

10. Explain the limited-disclosure note and what practice it recommends.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 08: Rocket Levels, HV / Volume

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 07.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Honda	_____	**A.** Friday close to Sunday open midpoint (Ch. 04)
2.	Static RI (DD)	_____	**B.** Band-to-band trade, one zone to the next (Ch. 07)
3.	Gap-fill scalp	_____	**C.** One RI above and below the prior close (Ch. 06)
4.	New-week half-gap	_____	**D.** Small, structure-based attempt to capture the fill (Ch. 05)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ VARIS bands are dynamic around VWAP, while DD bands are static.

2. _____ Every instrument shares one RI number.

3. _____ **Setup:** Your bands differ from a friend's. One of you anchors VWAP at 6:00 p.m. and the other at 9:30. Chapter 07 says the anchor can explain the difference.

4. _____ **Setup:** Price taps half-gap with no confluence. Chapter 04 says size up because half-gap is the strongest level.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. The outer VARIS band is about one full _____ from VWAP.

2. A sudden-event move of more than one RI is a _____.

3. Gap fill in resilience talk refers to the _____ gap.

4. To get the RI, click the _____ at the bottom of the platform.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which zone-ladder name means four zones?

A. Lambo

B. Honda

C. Yacht

D. Retirement

2. Which describes the static RI?

A. Based on today's open

B. Based on VWAP

C. Based on the overnight high

D. Based on the previous day's close, calculated at the end of the session

3. What is half-gap used for on stream?

A. Publishing levels

B. Support or resistance, target, confluence anchor

C. Computing margin

D. Setting the session anchor

4. Setup: Price keeps slicing through VARIS bands with no reaction. What do Chapters 03 and 07 suggest about size?

A. Smaller

B. Doubled at the next band

C. Larger

D. Unchanged

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the chain from CME margin math to VARIS bands on your chart.

2. Compare the half-gap and the VARIS inner band as places to trade. What does each need for size?

3. Explain why both the gap reference (Ch. 05) and the session anchor (Ch. 07) must be known before comparing charts.

4. Describe what Chapters 00 and 06 say about stream numbers and why.

09 — Confluence

Learning objectives

- Define confluence as agreement among independent reads that grades size.
- List common confluence ingredients in the Rocket Scooter stack.
- Apply the size ladder: normal → medium → small → sit out as confluence fades.
- Separate location (level) from filters (ARB/resilience/order flow).
- Recognize that half-gaps/yellows can still be traded smaller when confluence tools are down.

Main teaching

Definition

Confluence means independent pieces of the playbook **agree**. In Matt's teaching, confluence chooses **size** more than it invents entries from thin air.

Typical ingredients:

- A clear **level** (rocket/HV, DD, MHP, half-gap, VARIS band)
- **VWAP side** (above/below/reclaim/lose)
- **ARB / resilience** agreement (or intentional fade with small size)
- Optional **order-flow** (e.g. Bookmap) confirming how heavy the level is

Size ladder (year-round teaching)

- Strong confluence → normal / larger size
- Weak or mixed confluence → small size or skip

- Ladder language: **normal → medium → small → sit out** as confluence fades
- Boot-camp style MHP claims (≈75% without vs ≈90% with) are *their* framing — not a guarantee for your account

Location vs filter

- **Location** answers *where* (the level)
- **Filters** answer *whether / how large* (ARB, resilience, VWAP agreement, cross-index agreement)

Without a level, filters alone are rarely enough. Without filters, a level can still be traded — usually **smaller** and simpler (half-gaps + yellows when tools are offline).

Cross-index confluence

ES and NQ frequently disagree on gap-fill, half-gap tags, and VWAP reclaim timing. Treat cross-index agreement as an extra confluence check before declaring a “market” opinion (Ch. 14).

Cross-index: ES can lead NQ

A host answering a viewer (2026-05-05) said he executes on NASDAQ almost all the time but keeps the ES chart up, because the important NASDAQ items are also in ES and “a lot of times ES will lead NASDAQ.” If ES is at MHP and NASDAQ is “in no man’s land,” he takes ES being at MHP into account when he hits a level on NASDAQ. The captions do not name the host.

Open, close, and half-gap plays are not A+

On 2026-06-19 a host said the open play, the close play, and the half-gap play are “not A+”: “coin flip with a little bit of confluence,” and that he skips the

open and close a lot because of chop; a second host agreed he rarely takes the open. On 2026-09-01 a host said that when a strong pivot breaks (he named MHP, DD band, and “CAD active”) you do not bet on a weaker pivot to stop the move; he calls those strong pivots his A+ setups. This is why the size ladder drops quickly for a lone tap.

Platform aids

On stream a host describes gray boxes on the chart that show position size based on the confluences present (2026-04-01), and says every volume pivot has a complementary internals pivot (2026-08). The corpus clips do not show the formula behind the boxes. Do not invent a scoring system.

Practice

Before each entry, grade confluence in writing: strong / mixed / weak — then pick size to match. If you cannot name the ingredients, you do not have confluence; you have a feeling.

Key terms

- **Confluence** — Agreement among independent reads (level + VWAP + ARB/resilience ± order flow).
- **Size ladder** — Normal → medium → small → sit out as confluence quality fades.
- **Location vs filter** — Level supplies where; confluence tools supply whether/how large.
- **Mixed confluence** — Partial agreement — usually small size or skip, not full risk.

- **A+ / B+ setup** — Grading words from the streams: strong pivots with confluence are A+; open/close/half-gap taps are “coin flip with a little bit of confluence.”

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-confluence.txt
- Entry/exit hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-entry-exit.txt
- Risk hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-management.txt
- ARB hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-arb-tool.txt
- Book search Confluence: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Lose confluence → normal to medium to small to sit out (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tKnManUmpQ8&t=5161
- Strong confluence bet big; weak bet small (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dAVR6wjH-vU&t=12961
- Without full confluence, don’t short / long small (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gtnHni30l8o&t=2315
- Position-sizing boxes from confluence grade (2026-04): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6g0DoXbBx90&t=1973
- Confluence helps choose position sizing (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=6893
- No confluence — still trading half-gaps / yellows simpler (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PX4O2lA6eDw&t=8604

- MHP odds with vs without confluence (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=s4xX5ygtEtA&t=5645
- ES often leads NASDAQ — check ES when trading NQ levels (2026-05): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2zz24Rd3t9s&t=18640
- Open / close / half-gap plays are not A+ (2026-06): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SSbQpw6rYSw&t=14696
- After a strong pivot breaks, don't bet on a weaker pivot (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6e6EfZ8KTI&t=14158

Chapter summary

- Confluence is agreement that grades size; it is not a crystal ball.
- Ingredients: level + VWAP side + ARB/resilience ± order flow ± cross-index.
- Size ladder: normal → medium → small → sit out as quality fades.
- Location (where) differs from filters (whether/how large).
- Tools down: half-gaps + yellows still tradeable, usually smaller.
- Write a confluence grade before entry; unnamed ingredients = feeling, not confluence.
- ES/NQ disagreement is a confluence fact, not noise to ignore; ES sometimes leads NQ.
- Lone open / close / half-gap taps are "not A+" in a host's words (2026-06).
- The size-box formula is not in the corpus; no point system is invented here.

Questions to think about

1. Grade a hypothetical: yellow touch, below VWAP, ARB negative — what size bucket and why?

2. Why is “I feel good about NQ” not confluence under this chapter’s definition?
3. When tools are offline, what changes in your plan — the level, the size, or both?
4. How should boot-camp percentage claims affect humility rather than certainty?
5. Design a three-checkbox confluence card you could keep beside the monitor.
6. Why is “skip most open taps” consistent with “confluence picks size”? Where does the cost of a skipped trade show up in your journal?

Chapter Test

Chapter 09: Confluence

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Confluence	_____	**A.** Partial agreement; usually small size or skip, not full risk
2.	Size ladder	_____	**B.** What you have if you cannot name your confluence ingredients
3.	Location	_____	**C.** ES and NQ agreement used as an extra check before a “market” opinion
4.	Filters	_____	**D.** Strong pivots with confluence, in the hosts’ grading words

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Mixed confluence	_____	**E.** Answer whether and how large: ARB, resilience, VWAP agreement, cross-index agreement
6.	A+ setup	_____	**F.** A host's description of open, close, and half-gap plays
7.	"Coin flip with a little bit of confluence"	_____	**G.** Platform aid that shows position size based on the confluences present
8.	Cross-index confluence	_____	**H.** Normal, medium, small, sit out as confluence quality fades
9.	Gray boxes	_____	**I.** Answers where: the level
10.	A feeling	_____	**J.** Agreement among independent reads (level, VWAP, ARB and resilience, plus or minus order flow)

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ In Matt's teaching, confluence chooses size more than it invents entries.

2. _____ Filters alone, without a level, are usually enough for a trade.

3. _____ Without filters, a level can still be traded, usually smaller and simpler.

4. _____ The chapter gives the formula behind the gray position-size boxes.

5. _____ A host said that ES often leads NASDAQ, and he keeps the ES chart up while executing on NASDAQ.

6. _____ A host on 2026-06-19 called the open, close, and half-gap plays his A+ setups.

7. _____ On 2026-09-01 a host said that when a strong pivot breaks, you do not bet on a weaker pivot to stop the move.

8. _____ The boot-camp 75% / 90% MHP claims are a guarantee for your account.

9. _____ **Setup:** ES is sitting at MHP and NQ is "in no man's land." A host said he takes ES being at MHP into account when he hits a level on NASDAQ.

10. _____ **Setup:** You "feel good about NQ" but cannot name any confluence ingredient. Chapter 09 says that feeling counts as strong confluence.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Confluence means independent pieces of the playbook _____.

2. The size ladder runs normal, medium, small, _____.

3. Location answers _____.

4. Filters answer whether and how _____.

5. Optional order flow such as _____ can confirm how heavy a level is.

6. A host said "a lot of times ES will _____ NASDAQ."

7. The open, close, and half-gap plays are "not _____" in a host's words.

8. A host said every volume pivot has a complementary _____ pivot.

9. Before each entry, grade confluence in writing: strong, mixed, or _____.

10. With strong confluence you use normal or _____ size.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What does confluence mainly decide in Matt’s teaching?

A. The RI number

B. The session anchor

C. Which broker to use

D. Size

2. Which is a typical confluence ingredient?

A. A friend’s opinion

B. Your last trade’s result

C. VWAP side (above, below, reclaim, lose)

D. The day of the month

3. What does a level supply in “location vs filter”?

A. Where

B. How large

C. Whether

D. When to quit for the day

4. Which strong pivots did a host name as his A+ setups on 2026-09-01?

A. VWAP only

B. Random round numbers

C. Open, close, and half-gap

D. MHP, DD band, and “CAD active”

5. Why does the host skip the open and close a lot?

A. Because of chop

B. Because the platform is closed

C. Because RI is unknown

D. Because ES always leads

6. What should you do about the size boxes, given the corpus?

A. Copy the 75% / 90% numbers into a formula

B. Build your own exact point formula and call it Matt's

C. Do not invent a scoring system, because the formula is not shown

D. Ignore size entirely

7. Setup: Yellow touch, price below VWAP, ARB negative, and you want to go long. How would Chapter 09 grade this?

A. Not a trade location at all

B. Strong because yellows always hold

C. Weak or mixed; small size or skip

D. Strong; full size

8. Setup: Your tools are offline. You still see half-gaps and yellows. What does Chapter 09 say?

A. They are still tradeable, usually smaller and simpler

B. You must trade full size to make up for it

C. Filters alone are enough

D. Only trade the open

9. Setup: A level, VWAP agreement, ARB and resilience agreement, and ES and NQ agreement all line up. Where on the ladder does this point?

A. Small only

B. Normal or larger size

C. Sit out

D. Skip because too much agrees

10. Setup: A lone open tap with chop on the chart. What does the size ladder suggest?

A. Double size

B. Drop quickly toward small or sit out

C. Go to normal size

D. Ignore the ladder for the open

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Define confluence and list its typical ingredients.

2. Explain the size ladder and how confluence moves you along it.

3. Explain the difference between location and filters, with one example of each.

4. Why are open, close, and half-gap plays called “not A+,” and how does that connect to the size ladder?

5. Explain how cross-index confluence works, including the idea that ES can lead NQ.

6. Grade a hypothetical: yellow touch, below VWAP, ARB negative, and you want to go long. What size bucket and why?

7. Why is “I feel good about NQ” not confluence under this chapter’s definition?

8. When tools are offline, what changes in your plan: the level, the size, or both?

9. Design a three-checkbox confluence card you could keep beside the monitor.

10. Why is “skip most open taps” consistent with “confluence picks size”? Where does the cost of a skipped trade show up?

Spiral Test

After Chapter 09: Confluence

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 08.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Dynamic hedge pressure	_____	**A.** Two-zone VARIS trade (Ch. 07)
2.	Lambo	_____	**B.** Overnight hedge-pressure estimate while the options market is closed (Ch. 08)
3.	Margin-stress framing	_____	**C.** Above zero points up, below zero points down (Ch. 05)
4.	Polarity (resilience)	_____	**D.** About one RI from a reference approaches margin-call-class distance (Ch. 06)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Rocket Scooter aims to predict where volume will be, unlike a classical prior-volume profile.

2. _____ The inner VARIS band is two full RIs from VWAP.

3. _____ **Setup:** Overnight yellows have not published at the bell. Chapters 02 and 08 both say wait.

4. _____ **Setup:** Your chart still uses last week's NQ RI. Chapter 06 says this is fine because RI rarely changes.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. MHP is based on the maximum _____ exposure for dealer-hedged options.

2. A two-zone VARIS trade is a _____.

3. The half-gap is the midpoint between prior close and today's _____.

4. VWAP is the session's _____ of interest.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which describes MHP?

A. A static RI from the open

B. A prop rule

C. A VARIS band

D. Monthly hedge-pressure line that predicts high volume

2. Which tool is static?

A. DD bands

B. Dynamic hedge pressure

C. VARIS bands

D. VWAP

3. What does Chapter 05 say about every gap filling?

A. Only equities gaps fill

B. The chapter does not claim every gap fills

C. Gaps fill only on Mondays

D. Every gap fills by the close

4. Setup: Price stretches to the outer VARIS band. Which reaction bias does Chapter 07 describe?

A. Bands are meaningless at the outer

B. Outer means add size

C. The market always breaks out

D. The market likes to revert to VWAP from a risk interval

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the difference between DD bands, VARIS bands, and yellow HV lines.

2. Explain why waiting for refreshed levels is repeated in Chapters 02 and 08.

3. Describe how the gap-fill story (Ch. 05) and resilience direction caution fit together.

4. Describe the zone ladder and give an example of a Honda trade.

10 — Entries, Exits, and Trade Management

Learning objectives

- State the mechanical backbone: choose a level family, alert, wait, then decide with confluence.
- List entry families seen live without treating the list as an exhaustive ruleset.
- Describe common exit and stop patterns (next band, half-gap, beyond VWAP).
- Integrate confluence grading into entry authorization.
- Use a short pre-entry checklist before size is risked.

Main teaching

The mechanical backbone

A pattern Matt spells out clearly across months:

1. Pick your **level family** (example: monthly hedge pressure; or DD, rocket yellow, half-gap, VARIS band).
2. Set an **alert** (Asia or New York as relevant).
3. When price is not there, **don’t hunt**.
4. When it arrives, trade your plan — with confluence deciding **size** more than FOMO.

You choose the level family; the discipline rhyme is the same.

Entry ideas seen live (not exhaustive)

- Touch / reject of rocket yellow, DD, MHP, half-gap
- VARIS Honda (band → next band)
- Gap-fill scalp when resilience / ARB agree
- VWAP reclaim or lose as trigger with structure behind it
- Avoid "YOLOing" size at MHP when confluence is negative (small lot only if taking it)

Exits and stops

From live management talk:

- **Targets:** next band, half-gap, gap-fill, opposing rocket level
- **Stops:** beyond VWAP or beyond the invalidation side of the level
- **Scale / runners** after partials at structure
- If confluence **flips** against you mid-trade, reduce (see the ARB example below)

Management examples from the clips (day examples, not rules)

- **ARB versus your stop:** asked whether he exits on ARB crossing the other way, the host said that when it crosses by a large amount, more than his stop distance, "is about time I usually stop." It does not mean price will reverse; it is usually the stopping point (2026-09-01).
- **A fixed stop distance:** on 2026-04-14, with ARB close to neutral, a host used a 40-point stop and described about 60 points of target, one and a half to one.

- **A dollar cutoff first:** a host (2026-09-16) works out the price range that equals his maximum cutoff (his example was $300) before building a position, because more contracts shorten the range to that cutoff.
- **VARIS inner-band trade:** see Ch. 07 for the five-minute-close invalidation and halfway target he described.
- **Runner:** at gap fill on the S&P, the host said he would take profit and hold a runner in case the level breaks (2025-11).
- **Open-play caution:** open/close/half-gap plays are “not A+” in a host’s words (Ch. 09).

Pre-entry checklist

Before entry:

☐ Level type clear (HV / DD / MHP / half-gap / VARIS)?

☐ VWAP side agree or deliberately fading with a plan?

☐ ARB / resilience (or other confluence) checked?

☐ Size matches confluence grade?

☐ Stop and first target marked?

Relation to risk chapter

Chapter 11 expands when **not** to press, minimum size until edge, and prop notes (limited evidence). This chapter stays on the mechanics of getting in, managing, and getting out at structure.

Key terms

- **Mechanical backbone** — Alert at chosen level family → wait → decide with confluence → size accordingly.

- **Honda entry** — VARIS band-to-band initiation.
- **Invalidation** — Price condition that cancels the thesis (often beyond VWAP or through the level).
- **Partial / runner** — Take some off at structure; leave a remainder if thesis intact.
- **Max cutoff** — A fixed dollar loss limit worked out in price range before sizing (a host's 2026-09-16 example: $300).

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-entry-exit.txt
- Confluence: https://verbonzone.com/rs-confluence.txt
- Risk management: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-management.txt
- Book search Entries: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Mechanical Rocket Scooter levels plan (alert at MHP) (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XtmZkpckT8Q&t=8878
- Exclusively trading RS levels in New York (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XtmZkpckT8Q&t=5564
- Where should I trade from? When I get there… (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dAVR6wjH-vU&t=12961
- MHP long with small size when confluence negative (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_i85LiARERE&t=3746
- Short off VWAP into structure (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1KMwZ9U9t2I&t=3482

- Stop a little below VWAP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p4g79l9ilp8&t=14495
- Gap-fill as intended trade objective (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=5098
- Exit when ARB crosses more than the stop distance (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6e6EfZ8KTI&t=14125
- 40-point stop, ~1.5:1, ARB near neutral (2026-04): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cUc52xz1FAk&t=12365
- Max cutoff of $300: range shrinks as contracts grow (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j7MTmieukvs&t=7974
- Take profit at the S&P gap fill and hold a runner (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6ko754NPwD8&t=12740

Chapter summary

- Mechanical rhyme: pick level family, alert, don’t hunt, decide with confluence.
- Live entry families include rocket/DD/MHP/half-gap touches, Honda, gap-fill scalps, VWAP reclaim/lose with structure.
- Targets live at next structure; stops beyond VWAP or invalidation side.
- Negative confluence at a good level ⇒ small size or skip — not YOLO.
- Mid-trade confluence flip ⇒ reduce; one host’s example: ARB crossing more than his stop distance is usually his stopping point.
- Management numbers in the clips (40-point stop, $300 cutoff) are day examples from the hosts, not rules.
- Use the five-box pre-entry checklist before risking size.
- This chapter is mechanics; Ch. 11 covers when not to press.

Questions to think about

1. If price never reaches your alerted MHP, what is the correct action under the mechanical backbone?
2. Write invalidation and first target for a Honda long from VWAP to upper inner.
3. Why is “I missed the move, chase” incompatible with this chapter?
4. How do partials at half-gap change the risk of the runner?
5. Which checklist box fails most often in your own (honest) review of past trades?
6. One host works out the price range that equals his dollar cutoff before building a position. How does that differ from picking a size and then placing a stop wherever the chart says?

Chapter Test

Chapter 10: Entries, Exits, and Trade Management

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Mechanical backbone	_____	**A.** Five boxes checked before size is risked
2.	Level family	_____	**B.** Pick a level family, set an alert, wait, then decide with confluence
3.	Honda entry	_____	**C.** Next band, half-gap, gap-fill, or opposing rocket level
4.	Invalidation	_____	**D.** A fixed dollar loss limit worked out as a price range before sizing
5.	Partial / runner	_____	**E.** Price condition that cancels the thesis, often beyond VWAP or through the level

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	Max cutoff	_____	**F.** What you do when price is not at your level
7.	“Don’t hunt”	_____	**G.** Oversizing into a level when confluence is negative; the chapter says avoid it
8.	Pre-entry checklist	_____	**H.** Take some off at structure and leave a remainder if the thesis is intact
9.	YOLO at MHP	_____	**I.** The type of level you choose to trade, such as MHP, DD, rocket yellow, half-gap, or VARIS band
10.	Targets	_____	**J.** VARIS band-to-band initiation

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Under the mechanical backbone, when price is not at your level, you do not hunt.

2. _____ The list of entry ideas in Chapter 10 is an exhaustive ruleset.

3. _____ Stops are often placed beyond VWAP or beyond the invalidation side of the level.

4. _____ The 40-point stop and the $300 cutoff are rules every student must use.

5. _____ A host works out the price range that equals his dollar cutoff before building a position, because more contracts shorten that range.

6. _____ A host said ARB crossing the other way means price will definitely reverse.

7. _____ The 2026-04-14 example described a 40-point stop and about 60 points of target, one and a half to one.

8. _____ Chapter 10 covers prop rules and when not to press in full detail.

9. _____ **Setup:** You alerted MHP, but price never reaches it all day. Under the mechanical backbone, not trading is correct.

10. _____ **Setup:** You are at MHP and confluence is negative. Chapter 10 says this is the time to YOLO size.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Step 2 of the mechanical backbone is to set an _____.

2. When price arrives, confluence decides _____ more than FOMO.

3. A Honda entry is a VARIS _____-to-band initiation.

4. If confluence flips against you mid-trade, _____.

5. At gap fill on the S&P, the host would take profit and hold a _____.

6. The host's example maximum cutoff was $_____.

7. More contracts make the price range to the cutoff _____.

8. In the 2026-04-14 example, ARB was close to _____.

9. The last box of the pre-entry checklist: stop and first _____ marked.

10. Alerts can be set for the Asia or New _____ session as relevant.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is the first step of the mechanical backbone?

A. Double your size

B. Pick your level family

C. Ask chat for a signal

D. Buy the open

2. Which of these is listed as an entry idea seen live?

A. Entering only on Fridays

B. Selling every red candle

C. VWAP reclaim or lose as trigger with structure behind it

D. Buying any green candle

3. Which is listed as a target in Chapter 10?

A. Your account goal

B. A random round number

C. Yesterday’s open interest

D. The next band

4. What did the host say about ARB crossing the other way?

A. It always means reversal

B. He adds size when it crosses

C. He ignores ARB completely

D. A large cross, more than his stop distance, is usually his stopping point

5. What ratio did the 2026-04-14 example describe?

A. Even money exactly

B. One and a half to one

C. One to three

D. Ten to one

6. Why does a host compute the price range to his dollar cutoff first?

A. More contracts shorten the range to that cutoff

B. It sets the RI

C. It replaces confluence

D. The broker requires it

7. Which is NOT a box in the pre-entry checklist?

A. Size matches confluence grade?

B. Have I told chat about my trade?

C. Level type clear?

D. Stop and first target marked?

8. Setup: You missed a strong move and feel the urge to chase. What does Chapter 10 imply?

A. Chasing conflicts with the backbone; wait for your level and plan

B. Chase with double size

C. Chase only if ES agrees

D. Chase but skip the stop

9. Setup: You are long and partway through the trade ARB and resilience turn against you. What does the chapter say?

A. Reduce

B. Add more size

C. Ignore confluence once in

D. Remove your stop

10. Setup: You plan a Honda long from VWAP to the upper inner band. What is a sensible invalidation in Chapter 10 terms?

A. The prior week's close

B. No invalidation is needed

C. Beyond VWAP, the invalidation side of the level

D. The upper outer band

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Describe the four steps of the mechanical backbone and why "don't hunt" matters.

2. List the entry families seen live and explain why the list is "not exhaustive."

3. Explain where targets and stops go, and how partials and runners work.

4. Why are the host management numbers (40-point stop, $300 cutoff, ARB cross) day examples and not rules?

5. Explain the max-cutoff method and compare it with picking a size first and placing a stop wherever the chart says.

6. If price never reaches your alerted MHP, what is the correct action under the mechanical backbone?

7. Write the invalidation and first target for a Honda long from VWAP to the upper inner band.

8. Why is “I missed the move, chase” incompatible with this chapter?

9. How do partials at half-gap change the risk of the runner?

10. Which pre-entry checklist box do you think fails most often for new traders, and how would you fix it?

Spiral Test

After Chapter 10: Entries, Exits, and Trade Management

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 09.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Size ladder	_____	**A.** “Every single time” label for a strong-pivot trade (Ch. 08)
2.	EST trade	_____	**B.** Start time for VWAP and VARIS, such as 6:00 p.m. or 9:30 (Ch. 07)
3.	Session anchor	_____	**C.** Platform column label for risk-interval numbers (Ch. 02, 06)
4.	RARI	_____	**D.** Normal, medium, small, sit out (Ch. 09)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Confluence chooses size more than it invents entries.

2. _____ The 75% / 90% boot-camp claims are verified guarantees.

3. _____ **Setup:** ES is at MHP while NQ is in no man's land. A host takes ES at MHP into account when trading a NASDAQ level.

4. _____ **Setup:** The gap looks obvious and you have no confluence. Chapter 05 says size up anyway.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Location answers where; filters answer whether and how _____.

2. Weekly hedge pressure sits above or below _____ on the chart.

3. The outer VARIS band is about _____ RI from VWAP.

4. CME updates its margin requirements at the end of every _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is the half-gap new-week version built from?

A. Two VARIS bands

B. VWAP and RI

C. Friday close and Sunday open

D. Monday open and close

2. Which numbers publish at 9:30 per Chapter 08?

A. New monthly and weekly hedge-pressure levels from open-interest data

B. The new-week half-gap

C. The prior close

D. The VARIS 2x band

3. Which is a filter rather than a location?

A. ARB agreement

B. MHP

C. Half-gap

D. DD band

4. Setup: Price touches a yellow line from below, VWAP is above you, ARB and resilience are negative, and you want to short. How do the chapters read this?

A. No location exists

B. Ignore VWAP

C. Must go long

D. Location with agreeing filters; size by your written grade

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how a strong pivot breaking should change your behavior, using Chapters 08 and 09.

2. Describe how confluence (Ch. 09) upgrades a rocket touch (Ch. 08).

3. Explain how session anchor and RI freshness both affect VARIS.

4. Explain what “minimum stack when tools are down” means across Chapters 01, 04, and 09.

11 — Risk Management and When Not to Press

Learning objectives

- State core risk habits: minimum size until edge, volatility-aware sizing, confluence-matched size.
- Identify conditions that argue for sitting out or reducing.
- Summarize stream tenets language (risk, position, trend ID) without inventing firm rules.
- Mark prop-firm rule talk as limited evidence — not a compliance guide.
- Connect risk decisions to the day checklist in Chapter 15.

Main teaching

Core habits from the year-one corpus

- Trade **minimum size** until you find an edge
- Adjust size for **volatility** and for how many confluence checks pass
- Prefer strong pivots. On 2026-09-01 a host said that when a strong pivot (MHP, DD band, or what the captions write as “CAD active”) breaks, you do not bet on a weaker pivot to stop the move. Treat a break as a warning, not an invite to average in large
- Tenets language on stream: risk management, position management, market-trend identification
- Community + education (boot camp) framed as part of surviving the learning curve

When not to press

Judgment patterns that repeat:

- Confluence mixed or flipping mid-idea → reduce or stand down
- Price slicing through VARIS / levels without reaction → size down
- Flat open / chop where resilience is less useful → patience
- Open-drive longs as a **default** — stream hosts often avoid (limited open-drive curriculum; see Ch. 14)
- Tools offline and you feel the urge to invent levels — wait for platform marks or trade only pure S/R smaller
- After a string of forced trades — return to mechanical alerts only (textbook suggestion; not a quoted rule)
- Open / close / half-gap taps are "not A+" and a host skips the open and close a lot (2026-06-19)

Prop-firm rules (limited evidence — 34 index hits)

Year-one still has only **34** `prop-rules` hits. What appears:

- Firm-specific drawdown / DLL / payout / mini-micro limits get read on stream when relevant
- Consistency rules called out as a major industry constraint
- Evaluation "pass in one day" vs multi-day consistency rules differ by firm
- Wish for platforms to block orders that would violate a rule (2026-09-15: the speaker calls the "you didn't read the rules so we're going to punish you" approach an older-era prop rule, "20 21 sort of era" in the captions, and says platforms can now be programmed to refuse those orders)

Do not treat this chapter as a prop-firm compliance guide. If you trade prop, read *your* firm's rules; use Matt's RS process for *market* decisions.

“CAD / cat active” — caption caution

Captions write “CAD active” or “cat active.” The teaching around it: on 2025-10-10 the speaker called a “CAD active line” “extremely dangerous” because the market “can sort of just go all over the place,” and separately defines a **catalyst** as a sudden-event move of more than one risk interval (2025-11-13; Ch. 06). The two may be the same idea, but the captions are too garbled to be sure. This book does not define a separate indicator called “CAD.”

Statistical framing (Matt’s numbers, not verified here)

Matt describes his method as statistical. On 2025-10-16, on a flat-open day, the speaker said as a rule of thumb that about 88% of days close between the green (DD) lines, only about 4% break to the upside and about 8% below. VerbonZone’s `dd-bands.txt` records related figures from a 2026-09-03 stream (about 96% of days close below the top DD band; roughly 4% upside breaks). 88% between the lines plus about 8% below is consistent with 96% closing below the top. Treat all of these as quoted figures; this book has not tested them.

Consistency rules — how Matt explained the arithmetic

On 2026-09-04 a host gave an illustration: with a 50% consistency rule your biggest day cannot be more than 50% of the profit target, so you need at least two days; 40% means three days; 20% means five days. In another clip (2025-10-27) the speaker said “every prop firm out there has the traditional consistency rule” and gave a $9,000 / 20% example in which a bad first day forces extra days to climb back. On 2025-10-20 the speaker described one direct-funded program’s *active trading day* rule (the firm name is garbled in the captions) as different: you need a certain profit per day, and a windfall just

means your other days must be bigger. Firm rules change often. Read your own firm's current documents.

Professional framing

Matt discusses managing position size / risk / volatility as professional skill, and statistical habits that include **market avoidance** — choosing not to trade is part of the method.

Key terms

- **Minimum size until edge** — Habit of staying small while learning what actually works for you.
- **Market avoidance** — Choosing not to trade when conditions fail your filters.
- **Consistency rule (prop)** — Industry constraint on how much of a target can be made in one day — firm-specific.
- **When not to press** — Standing down or reducing when confluence, tape, or session quality fails.
- **Catalyst / "CAD active" (as captioned)** — Sudden-event move of more than one RI (catalyst); the "CAD/cat active" wording is a caption artifact whose exact meaning is not settled in the corpus.
- **Active trading day rule** — A direct-funded program rule a host contrasted with the traditional consistency rule (require some profit per day; a windfall just raises later days' target). Firm-specific; verify.

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-management.txt
- Prop rules hop (thin): https://verbonzone.com/rs-prop-rules.txt
- Confluence: https://verbonzone.com/rs-confluence.txt
- DD-band notes: https://verbonzone.com/dd-bands.txt
- Entry/exit: https://verbonzone.com/rs-entry-exit.txt
- Book search Risk: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Managing position size / risk / volatility (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sDsckyOfsIM&t=6759
- Statistical method: sizing + market avoidance (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wn9Bb8MRgyk&t=2307
- Tenets: risk, position, trend ID (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KZuGYRa8lec&t=12163
- Minimum position size until you find an edge (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ViOcoCfYlL8&t=5320
- Boot camp topics: confluence, sizing, volatility, RI (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GdWoSpuBdl8&t=6794
- Consistency rule as industry constraint (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sjse4gaUClY&t=2268
- Consistency rule across firms (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3pEBtgNNbkM&t=8883

- Consistency rule arithmetic: 50% → 2 days, 40% → 3, 20% → 5 (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=7078
- Active trading day rule vs traditional consistency rule (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OVgirD9HBL4&t=10929
- Platforms could block rule-breaking orders (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mSjLc0aEth8&t=10488
- “CAD active line … extremely dangerous” (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WYwVub-eXzg&t=8795
- After a strong pivot breaks, don’t bet on a weaker pivot (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6e6EfZ8KTI&t=14158
- 88% of days close between the green lines (his rule of thumb) (2025-10): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wn9Bb8MRgyk&t=2307

Chapter summary

- Minimum size until edge; size scales with confluence and volatility.
- Bad confluence at a famous pivot is a warning, not a double-down invite.
- Sitting out is part of the method (market avoidance).
- Chop, flat opens, slicing bands, and tool outages argue for patience or smaller pure S/R.
- Prop talk is sparse — read your firm’s docs; this is not a compliance manual.
- Consistency-rule arithmetic (50/40/20% → 2/3/5 days) is a host’s illustration; firm rules vary and change.
- “CAD active” is a caption wording; this book does not define it as a separate tool.
- Tenets: risk, position management, trend identification.

- Link daily risk decisions to the Ch. 15 checklist.

Questions to think about

1. List three concrete “do not press” conditions you would write on a sticky note.
2. How does minimum-size-until-edge conflict with prop evaluation urgency — and how do you resolve that ethically?
3. Why is averaging large into a broken MHP with negative confluence a textbook anti-pattern here?
4. What firm document would you open instead of this chapter for DLL / consistency rules?
5. After four forced scratch trades, what does the mechanical backbone tell you to do next?
6. “88% of days close between the green lines” is a quoted rule of thumb. What evidence would you need before letting it change your size?

Chapter Test

Chapter 11: Risk Management and When Not to Press

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Minimum size until edge	_____	**A.** Choosing not to trade when conditions fail your filters
2.	Market avoidance	_____	**B.** Adjusting size for volatility and for how many confluence checks pass
3.	When not to press	_____	**C.** Sudden-event move of more than one RI
4.	Catalyst	_____	**D.** Matt’s quoted figures, such as about 88% of days closing between the green (DD) lines

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	“CAD active” / “cat active”	_____	**E.** Habit of staying small while learning what actually works for you
6.	Tenets	_____	**F.** Caption wording whose exact meaning is not settled in the corpus
7.	Statistical framing	_____	**G.** Risk management, position management, market-trend identification
8.	Volatility-aware sizing	_____	**H.** Community education framed as part of surviving the learning curve
9.	Strong pivot break	_____	**I.** Standing down or reducing when confluence, tape, or session quality fails
10.	Boot camp	_____	**J.** A warning, not an invite to average in large

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ One core habit is to trade minimum size until you find an edge.

2. _____ When a strong pivot such as MHP breaks, the chapter says to bet on a weaker pivot to stop the move.

3. _____ Choosing not to trade is part of the method, called market avoidance.

4. _____ This book defines a separate indicator called “CAD.”

5. _____ On 2025-10-10 the speaker called a “CAD active line” “extremely dangerous” because the market “can sort of just go all over the place.”

6. _____ The 88% / 4% / 8% figures have been tested and verified by this book.

7. _____ Chapter 11 says it is not a prop-firm compliance guide and that prop traders should read their own firm’s rules.

8. _____ “After a string of forced trades, return to mechanical alerts only” is a quoted rule from Matt.

9. _____ **Setup:** The open is flat and the tape is choppy, so resilience is less useful. Chapter 11 says patience fits this situation.

10. _____ **Setup:** Your platform is down and you feel the urge to draw your own levels. Chapter 11 says inventing levels is the right fix.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Trade _____ size until you find an edge.

2. Adjust size for _____ and for how many confluence checks pass.

3. Choosing not to trade when conditions fail is called market _____.

4. The tenets language includes risk management, position management, and market-_____ identification.

5. Matt calls his method _____.

6. On a flat-open day, the rule of thumb was that about _____% of days close between the green (DD) lines.

7. In the same rule of thumb, about _____% break to the upside.

8. A catalyst is a sudden-event move of more than one _____.

9. Price slicing through VARIS or levels without reaction means size _____.

10. Open, close, and half-gap taps are "not _____" and a host skips the open and close a lot.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which is a core risk habit in Chapter 11?

A. Trading every open drive

B. Minimum size until you find an edge

C. Maximum size on the first trade

D. Averaging into every loser

2. What does the chapter say about a break of a strong pivot?

A. Double size at the next weaker pivot

B. Switch to options

C. Ignore it

D. Treat it as a warning, not an invite to average in large

3. Which condition argues for patience in the chapter?

A. A clean level with strong confluence

B. ES and NQ agreeing

C. A flat open with chop where resilience is less useful

D. Price reacting cleanly at a band

4. Why does the book refuse to define “CAD” as an indicator?

A. The captions are too garbled to be sure of the meaning

B. Matt forbade it

C. It is a prop rule

D. It is the same as VWAP

5. Which pair of figures is consistent according to the chapter?

A. 75% and 90%

B. 50% and 50%

C. 4% and 96% below the bottom band

D. 88% between the lines plus about 8% below matches about 96% closing below the top band

6. Which document should a prop trader read for firm rules?

A. This chapter

B. The VARIS settings

C. A Discord rumor

D. Their own firm’s current rules

7. What is the professional framing in Chapter 11?

A. Always trading the open

B. Managing position size, risk, and volatility as a professional skill, including market avoidance

C. Trading as often as possible

D. Following signals without judgment

8. Setup: You have taken four forced trades in a row. What does the textbook suggest?

A. Remove your stops

B. Stop and return to mechanical alerts only

C. Switch instruments and keep going

D. Take a fifth trade at double size

9. Setup: Confluence was strong when you entered, but it is now mixed and flipping. What does the chapter say?

A. Reduce or stand down

B. Ignore it until the target

C. Move the stop farther away

D. Add more size

10. Setup: A student plans to buy the opening drive every morning as a default long. What does Chapter 11 say about that habit?

A. It is a verified 90% setup

B. It is the best default trade

C. Stream hosts often avoid open-drive longs as a default; open-drive curriculum is limited

D. It is required by the platform

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain “minimum size until edge” and volatility-aware sizing.

2. List at least five conditions from the chapter that argue for not pressing.

3. Explain the “CAD active” caption caution and how the book handles uncertain terms.

4. How should a student treat Matt’s statistical figures (88%, 4%, 8%, 96%)?

5. Explain market avoidance and why choosing not to trade is part of the method.

6. List three concrete “do not press” conditions you would write on a sticky note and explain each.

7. Why is averaging large into a broken MHP with negative confluence an anti-pattern?

8. After four forced scratch trades, what does the textbook suggest you do next?

9. “88% of days close between the green lines” is a quoted rule of thumb. What evidence would you need before letting it change your size?

10. Explain the tenets language and the role of community and boot camp in Chapter 11.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 11: Risk Management and When Not to Press

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 10.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Max cutoff	_____	**A.** Forecasting where volume will appear versus using history (Ch. 08)
2.	Location vs filter	_____	**B.** About half RI and full RI from VWAP (Ch. 07)
3.	Predicted vs prior volume	_____	**C.** Level supplies where; confluence tools supply whether and how large (Ch. 09)
4.	Inner / outer	_____	**D.** A fixed dollar loss limit worked out as a price range before sizing (Ch. 10)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Under the mechanical backbone, you do not hunt when price is not at your level.

2. _____ The static RI is anchored on VWAP.

3. _____ **Setup:** Mid-trade, confluence flips against you. Chapter 10 says reduce.

4. _____ **Setup:** A host's 40-point stop worked on his day, so you must use 40 points on every instrument.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. In community language, outer toward opposite outer is a _____ trade.

2. A lone open, close, or half-gap tap is a "coin _____ with a little bit of confluence."

3. Gap fill in resilience talk means the equities gap, from about 4:00 p.m. to _____ Eastern.

4. "Dynamic" is Rocket Scooter's word for the _____ level.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which is a target listed in Chapter 10?

A. Opposing rocket level

B. The Discord channel

C. The session anchor

D. The RI column

2. Which statement about confluence is correct?

A. Confluence means trading more often

B. If you cannot name the ingredients, you have a feeling, not confluence

C. Confluence sets RI

D. Confluence is a crystal ball

3. Which is the static RI tool?

A. VWAP

B. DD bands

C. VARIS bands

D. ARB

4. Setup: You hold a winner at gap fill on the S&P. What did a host describe doing?

A. Close everything and never trade again

B. Add full size at the fill

C. Remove the stop

D. Take profit and hold a runner in case the level breaks

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Connect the pre-entry checklist (Ch. 10) to the confluence grade (Ch. 09).

2. Explain how VARIS (Ch. 07) supports the Honda entry and its targets (Ch. 10).

3. Explain why the textbook keeps calling host numbers “day examples,” with two examples from Chapters 06 to 10.

4. How does the overnight dynamic level (Ch. 08) affect your morning plan?

12 — Overnight / Globex Context

Learning objectives

- Explain why overnight / Globex levels are first-class in this playbook.
- Distinguish overnight MHP / dynamic levels from day marks.
- Describe pre-cash habits: pull levels, note RI, mark gap geometry.
- Relate overnight “cleaner tape” comments to New York session caution without overclaiming.
- Integrate overnight context into half-gap and open planning.

Main teaching

Overnight is not an afterthought

In this playbook:

- **Overnight / dynamic Rocket Scooter levels** are drawn before or as cash opens
- Overnight trading is often called out as cleaner / where “the best stuff” happens (even if Matt doesn’t always trade overnight himself)
- **MHP overnight vs day** can differ — don’t mix them up
- Gap vs Globex open shows up in entry timing (“coming back up into Globex open”)

What “dynamic” and “overnight” mean here

- **Dynamic** is Rocket Scooter’s word for the overnight level (one host’s explanation). With the options market closed, it is the best overnight estimate of where dealers are positioned before New York opens. At 9:30

the options open-interest data reaches the servers and new monthly and weekly hedge-pressure levels are calculated (2026-09-08).

- **Overnight MHP and day MHP are two separate levels** (2026-08-18): the overnight one is a predictive model; the intraday one comes out at the open.
- **Why the estimate keeps mattering (the speaker's stated belief, 2025-11-25):** other firms around the world do not have the U.S. numbers while their sessions are open, so they use estimate models too; their positions then hedge automatically through our session. He adds that "in reality we don't know why" the estimate is so strong.
- **Overnight RI as a rubber band (2026-02-13):** with futures open and stocks closed, the speaker described the risk interval as a rubber band that keeps futures from straying far from the stocks they track; if futures move farther than the rubber band, it can "snap" (he calls that an accelerated risk range). He then draws a band one RI distance on both sides.
- **Two gaps:** the Globex reopen gap and the equities gap (4:00 p.m. close to 9:30 open) are different; "Gap fill" in resilience talk is the equities gap (Ch. 05).
- **VARIS anchor:** on stream, VARIS follows VWAP anchored at the 6:00 p.m. session open unless you re-anchor it (Ch. 07).

Pre-cash student procedure

1. Confirm platform overnight / dynamic levels have refreshed (wait if late).
2. Pull today's RI for instruments you trade.
3. Mark prior close, Globex/session open, half-gap, full fill.
4. Note nearest DD / MHP / yellows relative to the gap.
5. Decide whether overnight levels still dominate into the cash open or whether the gap story takes over.

Globex vs New York

- Some stream commentary leans on overnight for cleaner tapes; NY can be choppier
- Into the cash open: re-check gap, half-gap, and whether overnight levels still dominate
- Futures can trade while cash equities are closed — RI and overnight HV framing still apply

Link to other chapters

- Half-gap / gap-fill geometry (Ch. 04–05)
- Platform refresh quirks (Ch. 02)
- Open-drive caution (Ch. 14)
- ARB session comments sometimes reference overnight cleanliness (Ch. 13)

Key terms

- **Globex / overnight session** — Electronic futures hours outside the U.S. cash equity session.
- **Overnight / dynamic levels** — RS HV/HP marks published for overnight use; must refresh correctly.
- **Overnight MHP vs day MHP** — Related but not interchangeable marks — clarify which you are trading.
- **Cleaner tape (as taught)** — Stream language that overnight can be cleaner than NY — situational, not absolute.
- **Dynamic hedge pressure (overnight)** — Overnight hedge-pressure estimate; replaced at 9:30 by the open-data-based MHP/WHP calculation.

- **Accelerated risk range** — A stream name for futures moving farther from the stocks than the RI “rubber band” allows (one overnight clip).

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-overnight-globex.txt
- Half-gap: https://verbonzone.com/rs-half-gap.txt
- Lecture half-gap: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt
- Platform: https://verbonzone.com/rs-platform-setup.txt
- Book search Overnight: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- Overnight levels onto the chart (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HFhCroaUSU4&t=735
- Best stuff often overnight (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7joNg6upb0Y&t=757
- Overnight futures open while stocks closed — RI framing (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=H9oE8Rn9V4s&t=6936
- MHP overnight vs day clarification (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=clnIruTCCvo&t=17075
- Overnight cleaner than NY session (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jNnE1s_MdPc&t=106
- Waiting on overnight levels (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pLOebitxKWo&t=1139
- Why overnight dynamic levels matter (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AvNAZ25mA-M&t=7512

- What “dynamic” hedge pressure means; recalculated at 9:30 (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=9012
- Why overnight estimates still matter in the day (his stated belief) (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AvNAZ25mA-M&t=7440
- Overnight RI as a rubber band while stocks are closed (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=H9oE8Rn9V4s&t=6936
- Futures gap vs equities gap (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Cn6-5A1ztUM&t=4797
- VARIS anchored to the 6:00 p.m. session (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pSwH1gzky5k&t=3333

Chapter summary

- Overnight/dynamic RS levels are first-class marks, not optional decoration.
- Wait for correct refresh; do not invent levels at the bell.
- Overnight MHP and day MHP can differ — label which you mean.
- Pre-cash: levels + RI + gap/half-gap/fill geometry.
- Stream language often calls overnight cleaner; NY may be choppier — situational.
- Gap vs Globex open affects timing language into cash; the equities gap (4:00 p.m. → 9:30) is what resilience talk means by gap fill.
- “Dynamic” = overnight estimate; overnight MHP and day MHP are separate levels.
- Ties tightly to half-gap, platform setup, and open caution chapters.

Questions to think about

1. What will you do if overnight yellows are missing two minutes before the cash open?
2. How do you label overnight MHP vs day MHP on your chart to avoid mix-ups?
3. Why might a student who only watches NY miss part of this playbook’s edge language?
4. How does Globex open interact with half-gap marks from the prior cash close?
5. Which checklist items from Ch. 15 are overnight-specific?
6. The speaker says “in reality we don’t know why” overnight estimates keep working in the day. How should that sentence change how confidently you describe the cause?

Chapter Test

Chapter 12: Overnight / Globex Context

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Globex / overnight session	_____	**A.** Two separate levels: a predictive model overnight, and the intraday one that comes out at the open
2.	Overnight / dynamic levels	_____	**B.** Options data that reaches the servers at 9:30 and is used for new hedge-pressure levels
3.	Overnight MHP vs day MHP	_____	**C.** What other firms around the world use while U.S. numbers are unavailable
4.	Cleaner tape	_____	**D.** Futures moving farther from the stocks than the RI “rubber band” allows

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Dynamic hedge pressure (overnight)	_____	**E.** Stream language that overnight can be cleaner than New York; situational, not absolute
6.	Accelerated risk range	_____	**F.** Rocket Scooter HV and HP marks published for overnight use
7.	Rubber band	_____	**G.** Confirm refresh, pull RI, mark gap geometry, note nearby levels, decide what dominates
8.	Open-interest data	_____	**H.** The speaker's image for RI keeping futures from straying far from the stocks they track
9.	Estimate models	_____	**I.** Electronic futures hours outside the U.S. cash equity session
10.	Pre-cash procedure	_____	**J.** Overnight estimate replaced at 9:30 by the open-data-based MHP and WHP calculation

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ In this playbook, overnight and dynamic Rocket Scooter levels are drawn before or as cash opens.

2. _____ Overnight MHP and day MHP are the same level and can be used interchangeably.

3. _____ At 9:30 the options open-interest data reaches the servers and new monthly and weekly hedge-pressure levels are calculated.

4. _____ The speaker said he knows exactly why the overnight estimate is so strong.

5. _____ Overnight trading is often called cleaner, even though Matt doesn't always trade overnight himself.

6. _____ The chapter says New York is always cleaner than overnight.

7. _____ Futures can trade while cash equities are closed, and RI and overnight HV framing still apply.

8. _____ On stream, VARIS follows VWAP anchored at 9:30 and cannot be changed.

9. _____ **Setup:** It is two minutes before the cash open and overnight levels have not refreshed. Chapter 12 says to wait rather than invent them.

10. _____ **Setup:** Overnight, futures move much farther from the stocks than one RI. The speaker described this as a calm, normal condition.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. The overnight one is a _____ model; the intraday MHP comes out at the open.

2. With the options market closed, "dynamic" is the best overnight _____ of where dealers are positioned.

3. The speaker described overnight RI as a rubber _____.

4. If futures move farther than the rubber band, it can "_____."

5. The Globex reopen gap and the _____ gap are different.

6. On stream, VARIS follows VWAP anchored at the _____ p.m. session open unless you re-anchor it.

7. Step 1 of the pre-cash procedure: confirm platform overnight and dynamic levels have _____.

8. Step 2: pull today's _____ for the instruments you trade.

9. Some commentary says New York can be _____ than overnight.

10. Timing language heard on stream: "coming back up into _____ open."

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Why are overnight levels called first-class in this playbook?

A. They are optional decoration

B. They are only for gold

C. They replace RI

D. They are drawn before or as cash opens and are core marks, not decoration

2. What does the speaker say other firms do while U.S. numbers are unavailable?

A. Stop trading

B. Copy Rocket Scooter levels

C. Use VARIS only

D. Use estimate models, whose positions then hedge automatically through our session

3. What did the speaker do after describing the rubber band?

A. Deleted VWAP

B. Drew a band one RI distance on both sides

C. Switched to options

D. Measured the half-gap

4. Which gap is meant by “gap fill” in resilience talk?

A. The new-week gap only

B. The Globex reopen gap

C. The VARIS gap

D. The equities gap (4:00 p.m. close to 9:30 open)

5. Which is step 4 of the pre-cash procedure?

A. Buy the open

B. Note nearest DD, MHP, and yellows relative to the gap

C. Ask chat for RI

D. Remove all marks

6. Which chapters does Chapter 12 link to for open-drive caution and platform refresh quirks?

A. Chapter 05 and Chapter 13

B. Chapter 01 and Chapter 15

C. Chapter 14 and Chapter 02

D. Chapter 07 and Chapter 09

7. What does the final step of the pre-cash procedure ask you to decide?

A. Whether overnight levels still dominate into the cash open or the gap story takes over

B. Which broker to use

C. How many indicators to add

D. Whether to skip the RI

8. Setup: You have an overnight MHP line and a new MHP line appears at the open. What should you do?

A. Delete both

B. Average them

C. Label which one you are trading; they are separate levels

D. Assume they are identical

9. Setup: You trade only New York hours and never look at overnight marks. What might you miss?

A. Part of the playbook, because overnight levels and context are first-class

B. Nothing; overnight is irrelevant

C. Only the RI number

D. Only the Discord

10. Setup: Cash equities are closed, but futures are trading after hours. Do RI and overnight HV framing still apply?

A. Only on Fridays

B. Yes, they still apply

C. No, they only work in cash hours

D. Only for MES

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain why overnight and Globex context is “not an afterthought” in this playbook.

2. Explain what “dynamic” means and how overnight MHP differs from day MHP.

3. Describe the speaker’s rubber-band explanation of overnight RI.

4. Write out the pre-cash student procedure and explain why each step comes in that order.

5. How should the sentence “in reality we don’t know why” change how you describe the overnight estimate?

6. What will you do if overnight yellows are missing two minutes before the cash open?

7. How would you label overnight MHP and day MHP on your chart to avoid mix-ups?

8. How does the Globex open interact with half-gap marks from the prior cash close?

9. Which checklist items from Chapter 15 are overnight-specific?

10. Explain why the overnight estimate keeps mattering into the New York session, as the speaker described it, and how sure we can be.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 12: Overnight / Globex Context

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 11.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Market avoidance	_____	**A.** Strong pivots with confluence (Ch. 09)
2.	Partial / runner	_____	**B.** Three-zone VARIS trade (Ch. 07)
3.	A+ setup	_____	**C.** Take some off at structure and leave a remainder (Ch. 10)
4.	Yacht	_____	**D.** Choosing not to trade when conditions fail your filters (Ch. 11)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Chapter 11 says a strong pivot break is a warning, not an invite to average in large.

2. _____ Chapter 09 gives the full formula behind the size boxes.

3. _____ **Setup:** You have taken four forced trades. The textbook suggests stopping and returning to mechanical alerts only.

4. _____ **Setup:** Price never reaches your alerted level. Chapter 10 says to hunt for another entry nearby.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Trade minimum size until you find an _____.

2. The size ladder ends with _____.

3. A host said one full RI is generally where traders get margin _____.

4. Half-gap is a midpoint; full fill returns to the prior _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which condition argues for patience in Chapter 11?

A. Strong confluence at a clean level

B. Agreement between ES and NQ

C. A clean reaction at a band

D. Flat open with chop

2. Which is a typical confluence ingredient in Chapter 09?

A. Your mood

B. VWAP side

C. Last week’s P&L

D. The weather

3. What did a host say about MHP levels that show up around 9:30?

A. They are “really big levels”

B. They replace VWAP

C. They are never used

D. They are standard deviations

4. Setup: You are at an alerted DD band, VWAP agrees, but ARB and resilience disagree. What size fits?

A. Double size

B. Small or skip, because confluence is mixed

C. Full size

D. Size does not depend on confluence

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Describe the “do not press” conditions (Ch. 11) and connect them to the size ladder (Ch. 09).

2. Explain how the mechanical backbone (Ch. 10) protects against inventing levels (Ch. 02, 08).

3. Compare the VARIS inner-band management examples (Ch. 07) with Chapter 10’s management examples.

4. Explain how RI is used across Chapters 06, 07, and 11.

13 — ARB and Resilience Tools

Learning objectives

- Define ARB as a confluence / scalping tell, not a standalone crystal ball.
- Describe resilience as context, especially around half-gap and gap-fill pressure.
- Combine ARB + resilience + level location into a practical filter stack.
- Note Bookmap / order-flow as optional confluence with Rocket Scooter.
- Explain the minimum viable tool stack and how to subtract tools when stuck.

Main teaching

What ARB is (as taught live)

ARB is treated as a **confluence / scalping tell**, not a standalone crystal ball. On stream Matt says things like:

- ARB is a **general confluence indicator** when something feels “off”
- Useful when flipping **positive / negative / flat** around VWAP and VARIS events
- Tied to **stocks tagging half-gap** (ARB can go negative even while index price rises)
- Explains *where sellers/buyers are* relative to names moving

How ARB works (Matt’s explanation, 2026-01-02)

ARB is an arbitrage indicator. For stocks that have started to move, it calculates how far each can still go (“where it finds those sellers”), builds a

new implied value for the index from that, divides by the index divisor, and compares the result with where futures trade now. Negative means the implied value is below current futures, so if things keep moving futures would need to go lower to catch up. Above zero means futures would need to go higher. He describes it as “pure arbitrage” on a move that has not happened yet, a **leading indicator**, and a more sensitive cousin of resilience that uses a different portion of the resilience code. A difference from resilience: ARB includes stocks outside the box at face value, while resilience only pivots inside the box. The speaker’s example (2026-01-02) of ARB calling a 29-point move that then happened is a single anecdote.

How Matt uses ARB in practice

- After a selloff, **ARB back to zero / flattening** can be a place to attempt a scalp with structure (e.g. upper VARIS inner)
- **ARB positive while price ticks down** (or the reverse) — pay attention; it’s a mismatch tell
- Stack with **resilience**: both negative → careful on gap-hold longs; both supportive → float / continuation stories
- Not enough alone in chop — Matt still wants a **level** (VWAP, half-gap, rocket, band)
- Speed + ARB mentioned as related tools outside older RDZ packaging

Resilience (companion read)

- Resilience acts as a polarity read (above zero up, below zero down) and Matt calls it his gap-fill predictor; whether that favors a fill depends on gap direction (Ch. 05)
- Positive resilience + half-gap → build / hold attempts

- Flat opens: on 2025-09-16 Matt said “you know how we don’t like flat opens here,” and wanted resilience to come in “long and strong” before chasing the open
- Designed around stocks sitting at halfway / half-gap points (early teaching)

Use resilience as **context**, ARB as **timing / mismatch**, levels as **location**.

Matt’s one-line definition card

A VerbonZone note saves Matt’s own definition slide: “RESILIENCE — Shows if index gaps are prone to filling based on arbitrage.” It also lists the six studies he typically loads: Liquidity Map, VARIS, Dynamic HP, Volume SMA 9, Resilience, and Arb (these notes are from VerbonZone’s personal ops file, 2026-09-23 and 2026-09-26).

Bookmap and order flow

Matt agrees Bookmap pairs well with Rocket Scooter as **order-flow confluence**. Many in chat use both: RS for *where*, Bookmap for *how heavy*.

Other tools mentioned

- Interval Lab / community VARIS tools — need RI from Rocket Scooter
- Boot camp — structured education for maps, MHP, confluence, sizing (verify current offerings)
- Charting VWAP + handmade half-gap marks when indicators are down
- Liquidity maps / bull-bear zones / hedge-pressure suite as related platform surfaces

Minimum viable tool stack

1. Rocket Scooter levels + RI numbers

2. VWAP + VARIS
3. Half-gap / gap-fill marks
4. ARB + resilience (or your chosen confluence)

Optional: Bookmap / depth.

If stuck, remove tools until only **level + VWAP side** remain — then add ARB back.

Key terms

- **ARB** — Confluence / scalp tell; often tied to half-gap behavior in stocks.
- **Resilience** — Strength / polarity read (above zero up, below zero down); Matt calls it his gap-fill predictor.
- **Mismatch tell** — ARB and price disagreeing — a cue to reassess.
- **Bookmap confluence** — Order-flow overlay answering how heavy a level is.
- **Minimum viable stack** — Levels + RI, VWAP/VARIS, gap marks, ARB/resilience.
- **Implied value (ARB)** — Index value recomputed after allowing stocks that have begun to move to complete their calculated move; ARB compares it with where futures trade now.
- **Leading indicator (ARB)** — The stream's word for ARB because it reads a move that has not happened yet.

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop ARB: https://verbonzone.com/rs-arb-tool.txt

- Confluence: https://verbonzone.com/rs-confluence.txt
- Operations notes (definition card, “usual six” studies): https://verbonzone.com/ops.txt
- Half-gap lecture: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt
- Half-gap hop: https://verbonzone.com/rs-half-gap.txt
- Book search ARB: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- What ARB actually does — locating sellers (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NrNnj-eP3wA&t=5224
- ARB as scalping tool — zero after flush, VARIS inner (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jNnE1s_MdPc&t=0
- Long while ARB negative — something’s off (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=9884
- ARB good → float at half-gap (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_i85LiARERE&t=5715
- Stocks cross half-gap → ARB jumps (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-sSWltZ8OaI&t=1607
- ARB negative while price up — stocks achieved half-gap (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XYAQBKBPkW4&t=10563
- Resilience designed around stocks at halfway points (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=11339
- Resilience as gap-fill predictor (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QwwTcGI8o6w&t=3191
- Bookmap + Rocket Scooter (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PX4O2lA6eDw&t=12280

- How ARB works: implied value vs futures; leading indicator (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k968_z06UvA&t=8389
- ARB vs resilience: ARB includes stocks outside the box (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k968_z06UvA&t=8727
- Exit when ARB crosses more than the stop distance (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6e6EfZ8KTI&t=14125
- “We don’t like flat opens” — resilience long and strong (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SfnZHTzLoNQ&t=1502

Chapter summary

- ARB is a tell/filter, not a standalone system.
- Resilience supplies context (a polarity read; Matt calls it his gap-fill predictor) and half-gap float.
- ARB is explained as an implied-value-versus-futures arbitrage, a leading indicator.
- Mismatch between ARB and price is information.
- Always keep a level as location; filters alone are weak in chop.
- Bookmap optional: RS = where, order flow = how heavy.
- Minimum stack: levels+RI, VWAP/VARIS, gap marks, ARB/resilience.
- When overwhelmed, subtract tools down to level + VWAP side.

Questions to think about

1. Price rises while ARB goes negative — what half-gap story might that imply?
2. Why is taking an ARB flip with no level a pedagogical mistake in this book?

3. How would you explain resilience to a classmate in one sentence without promising fills?
4. Design a stuck-day protocol that removes tools in order — what goes first?
5. When both ARB and resilience are negative at the cash open, what long behaviors become harder to justify?
6. Explain ARB negative in one sentence using “implied value” and “futures,” without saying the index must fall.

Chapter Test

Chapter 13: ARB and Resilience Tools

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	ARB	_____	**A.** Strength or polarity read that Matt calls his gap-fill predictor
2.	Resilience	_____	**B.** The stream’s word for ARB, because it reads a move that has not happened yet
3.	Mismatch tell	_____	**C.** Index value recomputed after letting moving stocks complete their calculated move
4.	Bookmap confluence	_____	**D.** What the implied value is divided by before comparing with futures

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	Minimum viable stack	_____	**E.** Confluence or scalp tell, often tied to half-gap behavior in stocks
6.	Implied value (ARB)	_____	**F.** Order-flow overlay answering how heavy a level is
7.	Leading indicator (ARB)	_____	**G.** One of the six studies Matt typically loads
8.	Index divisor	_____	**H.** When stuck, remove tools until only level and VWAP side remain
9.	Liquidity Map	_____	**I.** Levels plus RI, VWAP and VARIS, gap marks, ARB and resilience
10.	Subtracting tools	_____	**J.** ARB and price disagreeing; a cue to reassess

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ ARB is treated as a confluence or scalping tell, not a standalone crystal ball.

2. _____ Negative ARB means the implied value is above current futures.

3. _____ ARB includes stocks outside the box at face value, while resilience only pivots inside the box.

4. _____ The 29-point move ARB called on 2026-01-02 proves ARB is always right.

5. _____ Matt's definition slide reads: "RESILIENCE: Shows if index gaps are prone to filling based on arbitrage."

6. _____ Matt says Bookmap conflicts with Rocket Scooter and should not be used together.

7. _____ ARB is described as a more sensitive cousin of resilience that uses a different portion of the resilience code.

8. _____ The chapter says ARB alone is enough in chop, with no level needed.

9. _____ **Setup:** After a selloff, ARB flattens back to zero near the upper VARIS inner band. Chapter 13 says this can be a place to attempt a scalp with structure.

10. _____ **Setup:** Both ARB and resilience are negative at the cash open. Chapter 13 says this is the best time for gap-hold longs.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. ARB is an _____ indicator.

2. Above zero ARB means futures would need to go _____ to catch up.

3. Use resilience as context, ARB as timing or mismatch, and levels as _____.

4. In chat, RS answers where and Bookmap answers how _____.

5. On 2025-09-16 Matt said, "you know how we don't like _____ opens here."

6. Matt wanted resilience to come in "long and _____" before chasing the open.

7. The six studies include Liquidity Map, VARIS, Dynamic HP, Volume SMA 9, Resilience, and _____.

8. When stuck, remove tools until only level and _____ side remain.

9. ARB can go negative even while index price _____.

10. Resilience was designed around stocks sitting at halfway or _____ points.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. How does ARB build its comparison, per Matt's 2026-01-02 explanation?

A. It builds an implied index value from stocks that have started to move and compares it with current futures

B. It averages the last ten candles

C. It reads the RI column

D. It uses yesterday's volume profile

2. Why is ARB called a leading indicator?

A. It leads VWAP by one bar

B. It is published at 5:45

C. It reads a move that has not happened yet

D. It always moves first in the morning

3. How does ARB differ from resilience in what stocks they use?

A. Resilience uses more stocks than ARB

B. ARB includes stocks outside the box at face value; resilience only pivots inside the box

C. They are identical

D. ARB uses only futures

4. What role does resilience play in the stack?

A. Order size

B. Session anchor

C. Location

D. Context

5. Which is item 1 of the minimum viable tool stack?

A. A news feed

B. Rocket Scooter levels plus RI numbers

C. Bookmap

D. A prop dashboard

6. What is the source for the six-study list?

A. VerbonZone’s personal ops file, 2026-09-23 and 2026-09-26

B. The CME website

C. A Discord poll

D. A prop-firm manual

7. Which is listed as an optional part of the stack?

A. Levels

B. RI numbers

C. VWAP

D. Bookmap or depth

8. Setup: Price is rising while ARB goes negative. What half-gap story might this imply?

A. The platform is broken

B. Stocks already tagged half-gap and momentum quality changed

C. The gap is the futures gap

D. RI must be recalculated

9. Setup: ARB is positive while price ticks down. What does Chapter 13 call this?

A. Noise to ignore

B. A guaranteed long

C. A mismatch tell; pay attention and reassess

D. A reason to remove VWAP

10. Setup: You are overwhelmed by indicators and keep missing trades. What does the chapter suggest?

A. Subtract tools down to level and VWAP side, then add ARB back

B. Add three more indicators

C. Trade without any level

D. Copy someone else’s trades

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how ARB works, using implied value, the index divisor, and current futures.

2. Compare ARB and resilience.

3. Describe how Matt uses ARB in practice.

4. Describe the minimum viable tool stack and the stuck-day protocol.

5. Explain why taking an ARB flip with no level is a mistake in this book.

6. Price rises while ARB goes negative. What half-gap story might that imply?

7. How would you explain resilience to a classmate in one sentence without promising fills?

8. Design a stuck-day protocol that removes tools in order. What goes first and what stays?

9. When both ARB and resilience are negative at the cash open, what long behaviors become harder to justify?

10. Explain ARB negative in one sentence using “implied value” and “futures,” without saying the index must fall.

Spiral Test

After Chapter 13: ARB and Resilience Tools

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 12.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Accelerated risk range	_____	**A.** Partial agreement; usually small size or skip (Ch. 09)
2.	When not to press	_____	**B.** Price condition that cancels the thesis (Ch. 10)
3.	Invalidation	_____	**C.** Standing down or reducing when confluence, tape, or session quality fails (Ch. 11)
4.	Mixed confluence	_____	**D.** Futures moving farther from the stocks than the RI rubber band allows (Ch. 12)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Overnight MHP and day MHP are two separate levels.

2. _____ Chapter 11 says the 88% figure is verified by this book.

3. _____ **Setup:** You have both an overnight MHP and a day MHP on the chart. Chapter 12 says to label which one you are trading.

4. _____ **Setup:** You want to take an MHP trade with negative confluence at full YOLO size. Chapter 10 supports that.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. At 9:30, options _____ data reaches the servers.

2. Choosing not to trade is called market _____.

3. Confluence chooses _____ more than it invents entries.

4. The inner VARIS band is about _____ an RI from VWAP.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which describes “dynamic” in Chapters 08 and 12?

A. The VARIS band

B. The overnight estimate of dealer positioning while options are closed

C. A moving average

D. A prop rule

2. Which is a stop location listed in Chapter 10?

A. Beyond VWAP or beyond the invalidation side of the level

B. At the opposite outer band always

C. At the prior week's close

D. No stop

3. What does the speaker call the overnight RI?

A. A rubber band

B. A gap

C. A ladder

D. A magnet

4. Setup: Overnight levels are late two minutes before cash open, and you remember yesterday's yellows. What do Chapters 02, 08, and 12 agree on?

A. Skip RI

B. Use yesterday's yellows as today's

C. Draw your own from memory

D. Wait for refreshed marks; do not invent them

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the pre-cash procedure (Ch. 12) using marks from Chapters 04 to 08.

2. How does Chapter 11's "when not to press" list connect to Chapter 10's mechanics?

3. Explain the difference between the equities gap and Globex reopen gap across Chapters 05 and 12.

4. Describe how VWAP’s session anchor (Ch. 07, 12) and overnight handling (Ch. 03) can change your chart.

14 — Instruments and Sessions (ES / NQ / MES Notes)

Learning objectives

- Compare ES vs NQ habits Matt uses (divergence, who ran first, gap disagreement).
- State what is known vs thin about MES/MNQ in the year-one corpus.
- Place overnight/Globex vs New York in a session practice template.
- Treat open-drive as limited-evidence caution, not a full curriculum.
- Keep prop and micros notes honest about thin coverage.

Main teaching

What they actually trade on stream

Primary: **NQ (ENQ)** and **ES**, with **MNQ / MES** micros for smaller size or prop constraints. Gold and oil appear as side instruments with their own RI numbers. This chapter keeps index teaching focused on ES/NQ and marks thin spots clearly.

ES vs NQ — use the divergence

Live habits across months:

- One index may **fill the gap** while the other holds
- ES sometimes “already ran” a move NQ is only now tagging
- Half-gap / VARIS / VWAP stories can disagree — confluence across indexes matters

- Resilience / ARB often discussed per index complex
- Each index has its **own RI** (pull both)
- On 2026-05-05 a host (not named in the captions) said he executes on NASDAQ almost all the time but trades with the ES chart up, since the important NASDAQ items are also in ES and ES often leads

Micros (MES / MNQ) — limited evidence (~30 index hits)

Still only about **30** `mes-mnq` hits — **not** a micros-only curriculum. What is clear:

- Same RI family as the mini (MNQ RI quoted beside NQ; MES beside ES)
- Micros used for smaller risk, prop limits, or first engagement on an account
- Hosts describe micros as doing real work, e.g. “micros do the heavy lifting on expiration day” (2026-08-21); this is a remark, not a micros curriculum
- Example late-sample callout: **ENQ/MNQ ~288.75**, **ES/MES ~71.25** that day — always re-check the platform table

Practical notes from the clips:

- A viewer asked how to get MNQ to display in Rocket Scooter. The answer (2026-04-07) was that you need futures data, which means connecting a futures brokerage account (a CQG connection was named); the platform does not sell futures data.
- On 2026-08-13 someone explained that the platform’s risk-interval table at the bottom lists the ticker names, and gave the micro NASDAQ ticker as F.US.MNQ26 (contract tickers change, so check the current one on your own table).
- One exchange on 2026-08-14 compared NQ and MNQ VWAP-based bands: sometimes they are closer, sometimes farther apart, and a band hit on one

platform was missed by 6.5 points on another. The captions do not make clear who said what, so treat it as a reminder to check each chart, not a finding.

Do not invent a separate micros playbook beyond these notes.

Overnight / Globex vs New York

Covered in depth in Chapter 12. Session practice reminder:

Time box	Focus
Overnight	Dynamic / overnight HV + HP levels; note RI
Pre-cash	Gap, half-gap, DD/MHP vs VWAP seed
First hour	Gap-fill vs hold; open-drive caution if thin edge
Midday	Band-to-band + rocket touches with confluence
Late day	Smaller size; same levels

Always compare **ES and NQ** before sizing a “market” opinion.

The table is a study template assembled from habits in this book, not a schedule Matt states. In particular, “smaller size late in the day” is this book’s suggestion, not a quoted rule.

Open drive — limited evidence (~54 hits)

Year-one has about **54** `open-drive` hits — still no full open-drive curriculum. What appears:

- Situational: how the open may move with resilience / ARB
- Waiting through news windows; VWAP behavior into the open

- Explicit notes from hosts that they usually **don’t buy the opening-drive trade** as a default
- Gap geometry measured from prior ~4:00 p.m. Eastern close → 9:30 open

A host’s stated reasoning (2026-05-08; the captions do not name the speaker, and he says he only traded “seed” zones before Rocket Scooter, so treat this as a co-host’s view unless you confirm otherwise): he always initiated trades at a decision block; buying the open on its own is “a little bit of a naked trade” and “not really my jam.” He called that day the first on which a long at the open was tempting, because it was not just the DD band and the open but also the top of one of those zones. Captions render the zone word unclearly, so this book does not define it. On another stream (2026-05-05) a host said he would not randomly trade just because he missed the opening drive.

Treat open-drive as **caution + situational notes**, not a strategy chapter.

Prop rules — limited evidence (~34 hits)

Briefly: firm-specific drawdown / consistency / payout limits appear when relevant on stream. **Not** a compliance guide. See Chapter 11.

Honesty rule for thin topics

If you only have tens of index hits, your student notes should say **“limited evidence”** and refuse to overfit. That applies to prop rules, open-drive theory, and micros-only setup inside this chapter.

Key terms

- **ES / NQ divergence** — Indexes disagree on fill, half-gap, or reclaim timing — compare before sizing.

- **MES / MNQ** — Micros sharing RI family with ES/NQ; thin unique curriculum.
- **Open drive** — Opening impulse trade; stream hosts often avoid it as a default — limited corpus.
- **Session practice template** — Overnight → pre-cash → first hour → midday → late day focus table.
- **Futures data connection** — Rocket Scooter shows futures only with futures data from a connected brokerage; named on stream as a CQG connection.

References

VerbonZone

- Topic hop ES/NQ: https://verbonzone.com/rs-es-nq.txt
- Micros hop (thin): https://verbonzone.com/rs-mes-mnq.txt
- Open-drive hop (thin): https://verbonzone.com/rs-open-drive.txt
- Overnight: https://verbonzone.com/rs-overnight-globex.txt
- Prop rules (thin): https://verbonzone.com/rs-prop-rules.txt
- Book search Instruments: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- ES already ran; short NQ area off VWAP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1KMwZ9U9t2I&t=3482
- MNQ hit gap-fill, ENQ did not (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=7326
- If NQ reclaims DD, flip idea toward half-gap (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HaYraAW33rk&t=4221

- S&P could flush half-gap while NQ differs (2025-11): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jcpAjfhKEd8&t=11938
- RI callouts: MNQ and MES numbers (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=1025
- ENQ/MNQ ~288.75, ES/MES ~71.25 example (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HFhCroaUSU4&t=3965
- Host: why I don’t usually buy the opening drive (2026-05): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2x27KB1Tzoc&t=14558
- 9:30 gap geometry / ARB framing (2026-01): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k968_z06UvA&t=7813
- SPY open vs prior close half-gap space (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=m_-NZGlGVMQ&t=7346
- Executes NASDAQ, keeps the ES chart up; ES often leads (2026-05): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2zz24Rd3t9s&t=18640
- Needs futures data (a connected account) to see MNQ in Rocket Scooter (2026-04): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ixz_cGN3giE&t=3155
- RI table at the bottom lists tickers (micro NASDAQ example) (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BLr8IzA_lcs&t=12295
- Opening drive “a little bit of a naked trade” — a co-host’s reasoning (2026-05): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2x27KB1Tzoc&t=14680
- Won’t randomly trade because the opening drive was missed (2026-05): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2zz24Rd3t9s&t=15786

Chapter summary

- Primary stream instruments are NQ/ES; micros share RI families.
- ES/NQ divergence is a confluence fact — compare before a market call.

- MES/MNQ evidence is thin (~30 hits); no separate micros curriculum invented here.
- Session template: overnight marks → gap geometry → first-hour caution → midday structure → late smaller size.
- Open-drive is limited evidence; stream hosts often avoid default OD longs.
- Prop notes remain thin — firm docs beat this textbook for compliance.
- Honesty rule: label thin topics and refuse to overfit.
- Open-drive reasoning in the clips: buying the open alone is “a little bit of a naked trade” for one co-host; the session table here is a study template, not his schedule.

Questions to think about

1. NQ tags half-gap while ES has already filled — how does that change your size and instrument choice?
2. Why is copying NQ’s RI onto a MES chart a category error?
3. What single sentence would you write under “open drive” in your notes to stay honest?
4. How does the session template change if overnight levels failed to refresh?
5. If a classmate asks for a “MES-only Rocket Scooter system,” what do you say given ~30 hits?
6. One co-host calls a lone open buy “a little bit of a naked trade.” What would have to be on the chart before you would call it dressed?

Chapter Test

Chapter 14: Instruments and Sessions (ES / NQ / MES Notes)

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	ES / NQ divergence	_____	**A.** Label tens-of-hits topics “limited evidence” and refuse to overfit
2.	MES / MNQ	_____	**B.** Opening impulse trade; hosts often avoid it as a default
3.	Open drive	_____	**C.** A co-host’s description of buying the open on its own
4.	Session practice template	_____	**D.** A host’s remark, not a micros curriculum
5.	Futures data connection	_____	**E.** Caption or ticker label for NQ used on stream

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	ENQ	_____	**F.** Indexes disagree on fill, half-gap, or reclaim timing; compare before sizing
7.	F.US.MNQ26	_____	**G.** Needed for Rocket Scooter to show futures; named on stream as a CQG connection
8.	“A little bit of a naked trade”	_____	**H.** Overnight, pre-cash, first hour, midday, late day focus table
9.	Honesty rule for thin topics	_____	**I.** Micros sharing the RI family with ES and NQ; thin unique curriculum
10.	“Micros do the heavy lifting on expiration day”	_____	**J.** Micro NASDAQ ticker example from the platform’s RI table (tickers change)

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ The primary instruments on stream are NQ and ES, with MNQ and MES for smaller size.

2. _____ The year-one corpus contains a full micros-only curriculum.

3. _____ Each index has its own RI, so you pull both.

4. _____ Rocket Scooter sells futures data directly.

5. _____ The session practice table is a study template assembled from habits in this book, not a schedule Matt states.

6. _____ Hosts usually buy the opening-drive trade as a default.

7. _____ On 2026-08-14, a band hit on one platform was missed by 6.5 points on another in an NQ versus MNQ comparison.

8. _____ Chapter 14 says to build a separate micros playbook beyond the notes given.

9. _____ **Setup:** NQ tags half-gap while ES has already filled the gap. Chapter 14 treats this divergence as a confluence fact to weigh before a "market" call.

10. _____ **Setup:** You trade MES and copy NQ's RI onto your MES chart because micros share RI families. Chapter 14 supports this.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Micros are used for smaller risk, prop limits, or first _____ on an account.

2. MNQ RI is quoted beside _____; MES beside ES.

3. To display MNQ in Rocket Scooter you need futures _____.

4. A _____ connection was named as the futures data connection.

5. The open-drive topic has about _____ index hits.

6. The mes-mnq topic has about _____ index hits.

7. Gap geometry is measured from the prior ~4:00 p.m. Eastern close to the _____ open.

8. In the session template, the late day focus is _____ size and the same levels.

9. A co-host said buying the open alone is "not really my _____."

10. Always compare _____ and NQ before sizing a "market" opinion.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which side instruments appear on stream with their own RI numbers?

A. Bitcoin and Ether

B. Corn and wheat

C. Euro and Yen

D. Gold and oil

2. What does the chapter say ES sometimes does?

A. Never moves

B. Has no RI

C. Already ran a move NQ is only now tagging

D. Always lags NQ

3. What is the example late-sample callout for micros?

A. MNQ 70 always

B. MES 288 always

C. No numbers were given

D. ENQ / MNQ about 288.75 and ES / MES about 71.25 that day

4. In the session template, what is the midday focus?

A. Closing the platform

B. Band-to-band and rocket touches with confluence

C. Buying the opening drive

D. Pulling overnight RI for the first time

5. Why does a co-host say he initiated trades at a decision block rather than buying the open?

A. His broker forbids it

B. The platform blocks the open

C. RI is unknown at the open

D. Buying the open alone is “a little bit of a naked trade”

6. What did a host say on 2026-05-05 about missing the opening drive?

A. He would chase with double size

B. He would not randomly trade just because he missed it

C. He would switch to micros

D. He would quit for the week

7. Which statement about the “smaller size late in the day” line is correct?

A. It is this book’s suggestion, not a quoted rule

B. It is Matt’s strict rule

C. It is a prop requirement

D. It is from the CME

8. Setup: A classmate asks for a “MES-only Rocket Scooter system.” What should you say?

A. Here is the full MES system

B. Copy NQ’s system with NQ’s RI

C. The corpus has about 30 hits and no micros curriculum; do not invent one

D. Micros need no RI

9. Setup: Overnight levels failed to refresh this morning. Which row of the session template is affected first?

A. Overnight: dynamic and overnight HV and HP levels

B. Late day

C. None

D. Midday

10. Setup: On 2026-05-08 a co-host found a long at the open tempting. What made that day different, in his words?

A. ES had filled its gap

B. It was expiration day

C. It was not just the DD band and the open, but also the top of one of those zones

D. ARB was exactly zero

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how to use ES and NQ divergence in your plan.

2. Summarize what is known and what is thin about MES and MNQ.

3. Describe the session practice template and explain why the book calls it a study template.

4. Explain why open drive is treated as caution plus situational notes, not a strategy.

5. What is the honesty rule for thin topics, and how would you apply it in your notes?

6. NQ tags half-gap while ES has already filled. How does that change your size and instrument choice?

7. Why is copying NQ's RI onto a MES chart a category error?

8. What single sentence would you write under "open drive" in your notes to stay honest?

9. How does the session template change if overnight levels failed to refresh?

10. One co-host calls a lone open buy "a little bit of a naked trade." What would have to be on the chart before you would call it dressed?

Spiral Test

After Chapter 14: Instruments and Sessions (ES / NQ / MES Notes)

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 13.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Mismatch tell	_____	**A.** Separate levels; clarify which you trade (Ch. 12)
2.	Overnight MHP vs day MHP	_____	**B.** ARB and price disagreeing (Ch. 13)
3.	Minimum size until edge	_____	**C.** Level family, alert, wait, decide with confluence (Ch. 10)
4.	Mechanical backbone	_____	**D.** Stay small while learning what works (Ch. 11)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ ARB is called a leading indicator because it reads a move that has not happened yet.

2. _____ Resilience includes stocks outside the box at face value, while ARB only pivots inside the box.

3. _____ **Setup:** ARB and resilience are both negative at the open. Chapter 13 says be careful on gap-hold longs.

4. _____ **Setup:** Price is slicing through bands without reaction. Chapter 11 says this is a time to press harder.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Use resilience as context, ARB as timing, and levels as _____.

2. At 9:30, new monthly and weekly _____ levels are calculated.

3. A Honda entry is band-to-_____.

4. The static RI is based on the previous day's _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What does Bookmap answer in the RS and Bookmap pairing?

A. The session anchor

B. Today's RI

C. How heavy a level is

D. Where the level is

2. What is the first step of the pre-cash procedure?

A. Ask chat

B. Confirm platform overnight and dynamic levels have refreshed

C. Buy the open

D. Pull last week's RI

3. Which is NOT a core habit in Chapter 11?

A. Minimum size until edge

B. Size for volatility

C. Market avoidance

D. Averaging large into a broken MHP

4. Setup: Price touches a yellow line from below, VWAP is above you, and ARB and resilience are negative. What does the location-and-filter idea suggest you write before entry?

A. Nothing; just enter

B. Only the time

C. The level, the VWAP side, the filters, and a confluence grade, then size to match

D. Only the RI

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the minimum viable stack (Ch. 13) and how it maps to earlier chapters.

2. Describe how resilience is described in Chapters 04, 05, and 13.

3. Explain how overnight context (Ch. 12) and RI (Ch. 06) combine in the rubber-band idea.

4. Using Chapters 09 to 11, explain how a lone open tap should be sized.

15 — Putting It Together (Day Checklist)

Learning objectives

- Assemble a pre-trade checklist spanning RI, VWAP, VARIS, levels, gaps, and confluence.
- Use a stuck → clip map to reopen the right Watch link quickly.
- State a suggested study order for the textbook as a whole.
- Distinguish strongest vs thinnest year-one topics when prioritizing practice.
- Run an end-of-day review against the same checklist (judgment, not P&L theater).

Main teaching

How to use this chapter

This chapter is the checklist to keep beside the monitor (print the checklist pages). It is built from Chapters 02 to 14 and adds no new trading rules. Each box points back to the chapter that explains it. Some boxes are *suggested process* from this book (marked “process”) and are not quoted rules from the streams.

The day checklist (print these pages)

A. Before the session (overnight to pre-cash)

☐ Platform has refreshed. If overnight / dynamic levels are late, **wait**; do not invent them. (Ch. 02, 12)

☐ Today's **RI** read from the platform table (carrot → RARI / RI column) for each instrument I trade. NQ's number is not ES's number. (Ch. 02, 06)

☐ Chart VWAP **session anchor** known (6:00 p.m. Globex vs 9:30 New York). VARIS bands plotted from today's RI at ±0.5 / ±1.0 (±2.0 optional). (Ch. 03, 07)

☐ **Levels marked:** yellow / HV rocket lines, DD bands, MHP and other hedge-pressure lines. I know whether a line is the overnight (dynamic) version or the day version. (Ch. 08, 12)

☐ **Gap marked:** prior close, open, half-gap, full fill. I know whether I am marking the equities gap (4:00 p.m. to 9:30) or the futures reopen gap. (Ch. 04, 05)

☐ Alerts set at the level family I plan to trade; if price is not there, I am not hunting. (Ch. 10)

☐ Which topics are **thin** today (open drive, prop folklore, micros inventions)? I will not improvise on them. (Ch. 14)

B. At the open and in the first hour

☐ ES and NQ both checked. Do they agree on gap fill, half-gap, and VWAP? If they split, I say so before forming a "market" opinion. (Ch. 09, 14)

☐ I have not bought the opening move just because it is moving. A lone open / close / half-gap tap is not an A+ setup; I need something else on the chart. (Ch. 04, 09)

☐ Flat open? Resilience is less useful and chop is likely; patience is the default. (Ch. 13)

C. Before each entry (process)

☐ **Level:** which one, and is it a strong pivot or a lone tap? (Ch. 08)

☐ **VWAP side:** with me, against me, or deliberately fading? (Ch. 03)

☐ **Confluence graded in writing:** strong / mixed / weak, with the ingredients named. If I cannot name them, it is a feeling. (Ch. 09)

☐ **Size matches the grade.** Strong: normal. Mixed or weak: small or skip. Minimum size until I have an edge. (Ch. 09, 11)

☐ **Stop** and **first target** are marked, and I know the dollar loss if the stop hits. (Ch. 10)

D. While in the trade

☐ If confluence flips against me, I reduce. (Ch. 10)

☐ If price keeps slicing through bands with no reaction, size down. (Ch. 07, 11)

☐ I am not averaging into a broken strong pivot with bad confluence. (Ch. 11)

E. After the session (judgment, not P&L)

☐ Which boxes above were unchecked before my first trade?

☐ Where did my confluence grade and my size disagree?

☐ Which thin-topic temptation showed up?

☐ One clip to rewatch tomorrow, chosen from the stuck→clip map below.

F. Hard stops (process)

☐ Four forced trades in a row: stop, and return to alerts only. (Ch. 11)

☐ Tools offline: trade pure support / resistance smaller, or sit out. (Ch. 09)

Pre-trade checklist (seven items, topic keys)

1. **RI of the day** pulled (NQ/ES/micros/gold as needed) — topic: `risk-interval`
2. **VWAP** on chart; know overnight setting — `vwap`
3. **VARIS** inner/outer (±0.5 / ±1.0 RI) — `varis-bands`
4. **Overnight / dynamic rocket levels** + DD / MHP — `rocket-level`, `overnight-globex`
5. **Gap, half-gap, gap-fill** marked — `half-gap`, `gap-fill`
6. **Confluence**: ARB, resilience, optional Bookmap — `arb-tool`, `confluence`
7. **Size** matches confluence grade; stop + first target set — `entry-exit`, `risk-management`

If stuck on X → open these clips

Stuck on…	Watch	topics key
What RS even is	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13693	`rocket-scooter`
Predictable HV idea	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12118	`volume-hv`
Platform RI table	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=8002	`platform-setup`
VWAP ± RI idea	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=2581	`vwap`
VARIS vs DD	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oNr7tlCHCpY&t=13143	`varis-bands`

Stuck on…	Watch	topics key
RI definition	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GlDw0b6xhgc&t=10908	`risk-interval`
Honda trade	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pSwH1gzky5k&t=7046	`varis-bands`
Half-gap S/R	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PX4O2lA6eDw&t=8604	`half-gap`
Gap-fill	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QwwTcGI8o6w&t=3191	`gap-fill`
HV / yellow lines	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=8658	`volume-hv`
Mechanical entries	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XtmZkpckT8Q&t=8878	`entry-exit`
Sizing	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tKnManUmpQ8&t=5161	`risk-management`
ARB	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NrNnj-eP3wA&t=5224	`arb-tool`
ES vs NQ	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1KMwZ9U9t2I&t=3482	`es-nq`
Micros RI	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rl-LivvBWyk&t=1025	`mes-mnq`
Overnight levels	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HFhCroaUSU4&t=735	`overnight-globex`

Stuck on…	Watch	topics key
Open drive caution	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2x27KB1Tzoc&t=14558	`open-drive`
Prop consistency	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3pEBtgNNbkM&t=8883	`prop-rules`
Which gap (equities vs futures)	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Cn6-5A1ztUM&t=4797	`gap-fill`
How ARB works	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k968_z06UvA&t=8389	`arb-tool`
Exit when ARB crosses	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6e6EfZ8KTI&t=14125	`entry-exit`
Overnight vs day MHP	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=clnIruTCCvo&t=17075	`overnight-globex`
Consistency-rule arithmetic	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=7078	`prop-rules`

Strongest vs thinnest (year-one)

Strong: half-gap / gap-fill, risk-management, arb-tool, risk-interval, confluence, vwap, volume-hv, rocket-scooter, live entry-exit

Thin (even with ~316 videos; hit counts are index mentions, not lessons): prop-rules (~34), mes-mnq (~30), open-drive (~54), deep options-levels pedagogy (hits exist but not a chain course)

Suggested study order

Front matter → What is RS → Platform → VWAP → Half-gap → Gap-fill → RI → VARIS → Rocket/HV → Confluence → Entries → Risk → Overnight → ARB → Instruments → this checklist.

Public one-hop lookups: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt
Lecture sample: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt (the only lecture page that exists today; see Appendix B)

End-of-day review (judgment)

1. Which checklist items were incomplete before the first trade?
2. Where did confluence grade and size disagree?
3. Did ES/NQ divergence get checked?
4. Which thin-topic temptation (OD / prop folklore / micros inventiveness) appeared?
5. One clip to rewatch tomorrow — pick from the stuck map, not from P&L emotion.

Key terms

- **Pre-trade checklist** — Seven-item stack from RI through sized stop/target.
- **Stuck→clip map** — Table mapping confusion topics to timestamped Watch links.
- **End-of-day review** — Judgment review of process, not only P&L.
- **Thick vs thin practice** — Prioritize strong corpus topics; label thin ones.

References

VerbonZone

- Lookup index: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt
- How-to book: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt
- This textbook: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter-textbook.txt
- Lecture half-gap: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt

Watch (year-one corpus)

- RS identity: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13693
- Confluence size ladder: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tKnManUmpQ8&t=5161
- Half-gaps + yellows S/R: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PX4O2lA6eDw&t=8604
- Mechanical MHP alert plan: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XtmZkpckT8Q&t=8878
- ARB definition: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NrNnj-eP3wA&t=5224
- Open-drive caution (a co-host's reasoning): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2x27KB1Tzoc&t=14558
- Which gap — equities vs futures: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Cn6-5A1ztUM&t=4797
- Exit when ARB crosses more than the stop distance: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J6e6EfZ8KTI&t=14125

Chapter summary

- The day checklist is organized by time: before the session, open and first hour, before entry, in the trade, after the session, and hard stops.
- Checklist spans RI → VWAP/VARIS → levels → gaps → confluence → sized plan.
- Stuck → clip map reopens the right Watch link without re-searching the year.
- Strong topics deserve practice reps; thin topics deserve humility labels.
- Study order mirrors the chapter map from front matter through this page.
- End-of-day review judges process and thin-topic temptations.
- VerbonZone lookups and the half-gap lecture remain the public shelf.
- Compare ES/NQ before treating any single tick as “the market.”

Questions to think about

1. Which checklist item would have prevented your last forced trade?
2. Pick one strong and one thin topic — how should next week’s practice differ for each?
3. How will you use the stuck → clip map without turning study into binge-watching?
4. Write a 5-line end-of-day review template you will actually fill out.
5. Where does this checklist stop — and personal risk rules (prop/firm/account) begin?
6. Which three boxes in section C would you keep if you could only keep three, and why?
7. After a day with no trades, which sections of the checklist still apply?

Chapter Test

Chapter 15: Putting It Together (Day Checklist)

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Pre-trade checklist	_____	**A.** While in the trade
2.	Stuck-to-clip map	_____	**B.** Before the session (overnight to pre-cash)
3.	End-of-day review	_____	**C.** Before each entry (process)
4.	Thick vs thin practice	_____	**D.** Hard stops (process)
5.	Section A of the day checklist	_____	**E.** Prioritize strong corpus topics; label thin ones
6.	Section B	_____	**F.** After the session (judgment, not P&L)

No.	Term	Answer	Description
7.	Section C	_____	**G.** At the open and in the first hour
8.	Section D	_____	**H.** Seven-item stack from RI through a sized stop and target
9.	Section E	_____	**I.** Table mapping confusion topics to timestamped Watch links
10.	Section F	_____	**J.** Judgment review of process, not only P&L

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Chapter 15 is built from Chapters 02 to 14 and adds no new trading rules.

2. _____ Every box in the day checklist is a quoted rule from the streams.

3. _____ The day checklist is organized by time: before the session, open and first hour, before entry, in the trade, after the session, and hard stops.

4. _____ The end-of-day review is mainly about P&L.

5. _____ In section C, if you cannot name your confluence ingredients, it is a feeling.

6. _____ The checklist says to buy the opening move whenever it is moving.

7. _____ Chapter 15 says the half-gap lecture is the only lecture page that exists today.

8. _____ Prop-rules and mes-mnq are listed as strong topics.

9. _____ **Setup:** It is a flat open. Section B says resilience is less useful, chop is likely, and patience is the default.

10. _____ **Setup:** You have taken four forced trades in a row. Section F says to keep trading until you get one winner.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Today's RI is read from the platform table: carrot, then the RARI / _____ column.

2. Know your chart's VWAP session _____ (6:00 p.m. Globex vs 9:30 New York).

3. VARIS bands are plotted from today's RI at plus or minus 0.5 and plus or minus _____.

4. Gap marked: prior close, open, half-gap, and full _____.

5. If price is not at my level, I am not _____.

6. Size matches the grade: strong means _____.

7. Mixed or weak means small or _____.

8. In section C, I know the _____ loss if the stop hits.

9. Tools offline: trade pure support and resistance _____, or sit out.

10. In the end-of-day review, pick one clip to rewatch from the stuck map, not from P&L _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. How many items are in the pre-trade checklist with topic keys?

A. Twenty

B. Three

C. Seven

D. Ten

2. Which section of the day checklist covers “If confluence flips against me, I reduce”?

A. D. While in the trade

B. A. Before the session

C. E. After the session

D. F. Hard stops

3. What is the first box in section A?

A. Buy the open

B. Review P&L

C. Grade confluence

D. Platform has refreshed; if overnight levels are late, wait

4. Which is listed under “Strong” in the strongest vs thinnest list?

A. Prop-rules

B. Open-drive

C. Half-gap and gap-fill

D. Mes-mnq

5. What does the stuck-to-clip map do?

A. Replaces the chapters

B. Reopens the right Watch link without re-searching the year

C. Calculates RI

D. Grades confluence

6. In section B, what do you check about ES and NQ?

A. Whether they agree on gap fill, half-gap, and VWAP, and say so if they split

B. Which one has a higher price

C. Which one is more popular

D. Nothing

7. Where does the checklist stop and personal risk rules begin, according to the chapter's questions?

A. The checklist includes all prop rules

B. There are no personal rules

C. Personal risk rules (prop, firm, account) are yours and outside this checklist

D. Chapter 15 sets your account limits

8. Setup: You realize you are averaging into a broken strong pivot with bad confluence. Which checklist box are you violating?

A. Section E: rewatch one clip

B. Section B: flat open

C. Section A: RI read

D. Section D: not averaging into a broken strong pivot with bad confluence

9. Setup: You had a day with no trades. Which section of the checklist clearly still applies?

A. None

B. Section E after-session review, plus section A preparation

C. Only section D

D. Only section F

10. Setup: Before an entry you have a level and VWAP side, but you have not marked a stop. Which section is incomplete?

A. Section E only

B. Section C: stop and first target marked, and dollar loss known

C. No section covers stops

D. Section A only

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Describe the six sections of the day checklist and give one box from each.

2. Explain why some checklist boxes are marked “process” and what that tells a student.

3. Which checklist boxes can be done before the session and which only live? Why does the order matter?

4. Compare strong and thin topics and explain how next week’s practice should differ for each.

5. Describe the end-of-day review and why it judges process rather than P&L.

6. Which checklist item would have prevented your last forced trade? Explain using the checklist sections.

7. How will you use the stuck-to-clip map without turning study into binge-watching?

8. Write a five-line end-of-day review template you will actually fill out.

9. Which three boxes in section C would you keep if you could only keep three, and why?

10. After a day with no trades, which sections of the checklist still apply, and what would you review?

Spiral Test

After Chapter 15: Putting It Together (Day Checklist)

Covers: all earlier material, the Front Matter and Chapters 01 to 14.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 4 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (4 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Open drive	_____	**A.** Index value recomputed after moving stocks complete their calculated move (Ch. 13)
2.	Implied value (ARB)	_____	**B.** Opening impulse trade, often avoided as a default (Ch. 14)
3.	Globex / overnight session	_____	**C.** Matt’s name for resilience (Ch. 05)
4.	Gap-fill predictor framing	_____	**D.** Electronic futures hours outside the U.S. cash session (Ch. 12)

Part 2: True or False (4 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Rocket Scooter shows futures only with futures data from a connected brokerage.

2. _____ ARB negative means the index must fall.

3. _____ **Setup:** NQ has tagged half-gap and ES already filled. Chapters 09 and 14 say compare indexes before forming a market opinion.

4. _____ **Setup:** The platform's overnight levels are late at the bell, so you draw yesterday's MHP as today's. Chapters 02 and 12 approve.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (4 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. MES shares the RI family with _____.

2. Matt's six studies include Volume SMA _____.

3. Overnight RI was described as a rubber _____.

4. A host's example dollar cutoff was $_____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (4 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. Which is a thin topic with about 54 index hits?

A. VWAP

B. Risk interval

C. Open drive

D. Half-gap

2. Which describes Bookmap's role?

A. Optional order-flow confluence for how heavy a level is

B. A prop rule

C. The session anchor

D. The source of RI

3. What does the size ladder do as confluence fades?

A. Moves from normal to medium to small to sit out

B. Doubles each step

C. Moves toward bigger size

D. Stays fixed

4. Setup: You trade MNQ and need its RI. Where do you read it?

A. A standard deviation tool

B. The platform's RI table, MNQ row, quoted beside NQ

C. The ES row

D. A stream from last month

Part 5: Essay (4 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Trace one trading morning from the pre-cash procedure (Ch. 12) through an entry decision (Ch. 09, 10).

2. Explain how thin topics are handled across Chapters 00, 11, and 14.

3. Compare DD bands, VARIS bands, and MHP as levels.

4. Using Chapters 05, 13, and 14, explain how resilience and ES and NQ divergence affect a gap-fill trade.

Study Guide and Final Review

This section closes the book. Use it after you have read Chapters 00 to 15 and spent time with the Watch links and a chart open. It adds no new trading rules. Every question points back to the chapter that answers it. Bracketed numbers are chapter numbers.

Not financial advice. This is an educational review of public stream teaching. Futures trading involves substantial risk of loss.

How to use this review

1. Try each question from memory first, in writing.
2. Then open the chapter in brackets and check yourself.
3. Mark anything you could not answer. Re-read only those parts.
4. Do not rewatch clips to “find the answer.” Rewatch to test an answer you already wrote.

Part 1 — Recall (one or two sentences each)

1. Explain the difference between the Rocket Scooter platform, the strategy, and community overlays. [01]
2. Where on the platform do you read today’s risk interval, and what must you do after the platform refreshes? [02, 06]
3. Name the two things most likely to make VARIS look different on two charts. [03, 07]
4. Define half-gap. How is the new-week half-gap built differently? [04]
5. What is the difference between the equities gap and the futures reopen gap? Which one is meant by “gap fill” in resilience talk? [05, 12]

6. Why is risk interval not a standard deviation? What does the static version anchor to? [06]
7. State the difference between DD bands and VARIS bands. What are inner, outer, Honda, and retirement? [07]
8. What does “predicted high volume” mean compared with a prior-volume profile? What does “dynamic” mean for a level? [08, 12]
9. List the ingredients of confluence. Describe the size ladder. [09]
10. Write the four steps of the mechanical backbone. [10]
11. What does “minimum size until edge” mean, and what is market avoidance? [11]
12. Why are overnight MHP and day MHP not interchangeable? [12]
13. What does ARB compare, and why is it called a leading indicator? How does it differ from resilience? [13]
14. Name three thin topics and say what you may and may not claim about each. [14]
15. List the six sections of the day checklist. [15]

Part 2 — Judgment (cross-chapter)

1. A level has no confluence at all. The chapters allow two reasonable responses. What are they, and what decides between them? [09, 10, 11]
2. Matt’s stream numbers for RI are given as day examples. Explain why copying any single example into a chart template is an error. [06]
3. ES and NQ disagree on gap fill. Walk through how that changes the instrument you look at, your size, and your target. [05, 09, 14]
4. Overnight levels have not published two minutes before the cash open. What does the book say to do, and what does it say not to do? [02, 08, 12]

5. Explain why a lone half-gap tap is called “not A+” in a host’s words, and how that fits the size ladder. [04, 09]
6. A host’s management example (a five-minute close outside the inner band, a $300 cutoff, a 40-point stop) sounds precise. Why does this book still refuse to call it a rule? [07, 10]
7. Resilience is called a gap-fill predictor. Why does the book say the sign of resilience alone is not enough to decide direction? [05, 13]
8. What is the difference between location and filters? Give one example of each. [09, 13]
9. A prop-firm consistency rule and a Rocket Scooter confluence rule can seem to conflict with each other. Which document decides what, and why? [11]
10. Which checklist boxes can be done before the session, and which can only be done live? Why does the order matter? [15]

Part 3 — Case drills (hypothetical)

These cases are invented for practice. Every number is made up and is not a market fact or a trade idea. Write what the book would have you check, in order. Do not write a trade call.

Case A. The platform is down at the open. You have VWAP, a prior close, and an open on your chart. You remember where yesterday’s yellow lines were. [02, 04, 09, 12]

Case B. NQ has tagged half-gap. ES filled its gap twenty minutes ago and NQ has not. ARB is near zero and resilience is slightly positive. [05, 09, 13, 14]

Case C. You refreshed the platform and the NQ risk interval is different from the number you plotted an hour ago. [02, 06, 07]

Case D. Price touches a yellow line from below. VWAP is above you. ARB is negative and resilience is negative. [08, 09, 10]

Case E. Your chart shows VARIS bands that disagree with a streamer's bands. Both used the same RI number. [03, 07]

Case F. A friend asks you for a "MES-only Rocket Scooter system" and wants a prop-firm rule summary from this book. [11, 14]

Case G. You have taken four trades in a row that you did not plan the night before. [10, 11, 15]

Look at the chapters in brackets after you write your answers. For each case ask: what is the level, what is the confluence grade, what is the size, and what would make me do nothing?

Part 4 — Thin-topic honesty check

Mark each statement **Supported**, **Limited evidence**, or **Not in this book**. The key follows.

1. "Matt teaches a complete opening-drive entry system."
2. "NQ's RI is 288."
3. "A 50% consistency rule means the biggest day can be at most 50% of the profit target, so at least two days are needed."
4. "MES has its own separate indicator set."
5. "The weighting formula behind the size boxes is described in the corpus."
6. "Dynamic hedge pressure is the overnight estimate and is replaced at 9:30."
7. "The 40-point-reclaim backtest result is verified."
8. "Overnight and day MHP are separate levels."
9. "The Interval Lab tool needs today's RI number."

10. “Every gap fills.”

Key. 1 Not in this book (open drive is limited evidence, Ch. 14). 2 Limited evidence: a day example only, Ch. 06. 3 Supported as a host’s illustration; firm rules vary, Ch. 11. 4 Not in this book, Ch. 14. 5 Not in this book, Ch. 09. 6 Supported as a host’s explanation, Ch. 08 and 12. 7 Not in this book: the data is not shown, Ch. 07. 8 Supported, Ch. 12. 9 Supported, Ch. 07. 10 Not in this book, Ch. 05 says the opposite.

Part 5 — Suggested study plan (this book’s suggestion, not from the streams)

- **Session 1:** Chapters 00 to 02. Open the platform table. Find the RI column.
- **Session 2:** Chapters 03 and 04. One-hour journal using only VWAP side, then add half-gap marks.
- **Session 3:** Chapters 05 and 06. Mark equities gap and futures gap on one day’s chart.
- **Session 4:** Chapter 07. Plot VARIS. Compare two session anchors.
- **Session 5:** Chapters 08 and 09. Mark yellows, DD, MHP. Grade confluence in writing.
- **Session 6:** Chapters 10 and 11. Write your own pre-entry checklist and your own “do not press” sticky note.
- **Session 7:** Chapters 12 to 14. Overnight procedure, ARB and resilience, ES versus NQ.
- **Session 8:** Chapter 15 and this review. Run the full day checklist on a replay day.

Between sessions, watch no more than a few clips and write what you saw before reading the chapter again. The point is judgment, not binge-watching.

Part 6 — Self-grade

After Parts 1 to 4, count how many questions you could answer without opening a chapter. Re-read the chapters for every unanswered item. Do not trade live on topics where you cannot state what is thin and what is thick.

Closing reminder: this book teaches how Matt and the hosts describe their process. It does not recommend any trade. RI numbers change every day. Read your own firm’s documents.

Final Test A

Cumulative test on the whole book (Front Matter, Chapters 01 to 15, and the Study Guide)

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Risk interval (RI)	_____	**A.** Monthly hedge-pressure line that predicts high volume (Ch. 08)
2.	VARIS	_____	**B.** Arbitrage indicator used as a confluence and scalp tell (Ch. 13)
3.	DD bands	_____	**C.** Overnight, pre-cash, first hour, midday, late day focus table (Ch. 14)
4.	Half-gap	_____	**D.** Per-instrument, day-refreshed distance from CME-margin-style math (Ch. 06)

No.	Term	Answer	Description
5.	MHP	_____	**E.** Level family, alert, wait, decide with confluence (Ch. 10)
6.	ARB	_____	**F.** Midpoint between prior session close and today’s open (Ch. 04)
7.	Size ladder	_____	**G.** Dynamic RI bands centered on VWAP (Ch. 07)
8.	Mechanical backbone	_____	**H.** Choosing not to trade when conditions fail your filters (Ch. 11)
9.	Market avoidance	_____	**I.** Normal, medium, small, sit out (Ch. 09)
10.	Session practice template	_____	**J.** Static RI pivots from the prior close (Ch. 06, 07)

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ Rocket Scooter is both a platform and a way of reading the day.

2. _____ RI is a standard-deviation band.

3. _____ The equities gap runs from about 4:00 p.m. Eastern close to the 9:30 Eastern open.

4. _____ The inner VARIS band is one full RI from VWAP.

5. _____ Overnight MHP and day MHP are two separate levels.

6. _____ Every gap fills.

7. _____ Without a level, filters alone are rarely enough.

8. _____ The micros (MES and MNQ) have a full separate curriculum in the year-one corpus.

9. _____ **Setup:** ES and NQ disagree on gap fill. The book says compare indexes and wait or size down before forming a market opinion.

10. _____ **Setup:** Your platform rolled new data, but you keep the morning RI on your chart. The book approves because RI rarely changes.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. VWAP stands for volume-weighted _____ price.

2. To read RI, click the _____ at the bottom of the platform.

3. The new-week half-gap runs from Friday close to _____ open.

4. Matt calls resilience his gap-fill _____.

5. Static RI levels are the _____ bands.

6. Four zones on the VARIS ladder is a _____ trade.

7. Rocket Scooter aims to _____ where volume will be.

8. Location answers where; filters answer whether and how _____.

9. Trade _____ size until you find an edge.

10. ARB is called a _____ indicator because it reads a move that has not happened yet.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What is the role of VWAP in the playbook?

A. The source of RI

B. Center line and bias hinge that VARIS hangs on

C. A news feed

D. A prop-firm rule

2. Which gap is meant by “gap fill” in resilience talk?

A. The VARIS gap

B. The overnight range

C. The equities gap

D. The futures reopen gap

3. What does a host say one full RI generally represents?

A. The half-gap

B. Where traders are getting margin called

C. Where every trade must exit

D. A standard deviation

4. Which describes “dynamic” in Rocket Scooter language?

A. A Bookmap setting

B. A VWAP-based band

C. A moving stop

D. The overnight level, an estimate of dealer positioning while options are closed

5. What does confluence mainly decide?

A. RI

B. Size

C. The broker

D. The session anchor

6. Which is a target listed in Chapter 10?

A. Your monthly income goal

B. A random round number

C. The RI column

D. Next band, half-gap, gap-fill, or opposing rocket level

7. Which is a thin topic?

A. Open-drive theory

B. VWAP

C. Half-gap

D. Confluence

8. Setup: Overnight levels have not published two minutes before the cash open. What does the book say to do?

A. Wait for refreshed marks; do not invent them

B. Skip RI

C. Draw yesterday’s lines as today’s

D. Buy the open

9. Setup: A host-style inner-band long gets a five-minute candle close outside the inner band. What did the host describe?

A. Add size

B. Move the stop

C. Ignore it

D. Wait for a retest from the other side and exit for a small loss

10. Setup: Price is rising but ARB turns negative near half-gap. What might this mean?

A. The new week began

B. RI changed

C. Stocks already tagged half-gap and momentum quality changed

D. The platform is offline

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain how RI, DD bands, and VARIS bands are related.

2. Describe the half-gap procedure and the “fill, float, or fail” question.

3. Explain the size ladder and the difference between location and filters.

4. Describe the pre-cash procedure for overnight and Globex context.

5. Explain how a student should treat thin topics and day-example numbers.

6. Explain the difference between the equities gap and the futures gap, and connect it to resilience.

7. Describe the mechanical backbone and the pre-entry checklist.

8. Explain why the overnight dynamic level and the day MHP must be labeled separately.

9. Explain how to use ES and NQ together in Rocket Scooter analysis.

10. Describe at least four “do not press” conditions and how they connect to market avoidance.

Final Test B

Cumulative test on the whole book (Front Matter, Chapters 01 to 15, and the Study Guide)

Name: _____ Date: _____

Directions: This test has five parts with 10 questions each: matching, true or false, fill in the blank, multiple choice, and essay. Questions in each part move from recall to understanding to application. Questions marked **Setup** describe a chart situation in words; choose the read or action this book teaches. Write essay answers on separate paper. Answers are in Appendix D: Answer Key.

Part 1: Matching (10 questions)

Match each term with its description. Write the letter of the description in the Answer column. Each letter is used once.

No.	Term	Answer	Description
1.	Line of interest	_____	**A.** One-zone, band-to-band VARIS trade (Ch. 07)
2.	Gap-fill	_____	**B.** Sudden-event move of more than one RI (Ch. 06, 11)
3.	Honda	_____	**C.** ARB and price disagreeing (Ch. 13)
4.	Rocket / yellow / HV level	_____	**D.** Agreement among independent reads that grades size (Ch. 09)
5.	Confluence	_____	**E.** Table mapping confusion topics to Watch links (Ch. 15)

No.	Term	Answer	Description
6.	Max cutoff	_____	**F.** Futures moving farther than the RI rubber band allows (Ch. 12)
7.	Catalyst	_____	**G.** Dollar loss limit worked out as a price range before sizing (Ch. 10)
8.	Accelerated risk range	_____	**H.** Return toward the prior close, closing the opening gap (Ch. 05)
9.	Mismatch tell	_____	**I.** Predicted high-volume pivot (Ch. 08)
10.	Stuck-to-clip map	_____	**J.** VWAP's role as magnet and bias hinge (Ch. 03)

Part 2: True or False (10 questions)

Write T if the statement is true or F if it is false.

1. _____ VARIS needs today's RI number from the platform to plot correctly.

2. _____ The VWAP flanks are standard-deviation bands.

3. _____ Weak confluence means small or skip, even if the geometric fill looks obvious.

4. _____ The boot-camp 75% / 90% MHP claims are guarantees.

5. _____ ARB includes stocks outside the box at face value, while resilience only pivots inside the box.

6. _____ Open, close, and half-gap plays are called A+ by the hosts.

7. _____ On stream, VWAP was described as anchored at the 6:00 p.m. session open, with an option to anchor at 9:30.

8. _____ Rocket Scooter sells futures data.

9. _____ **Setup:** You have taken four forced trades in a row. The book's hard stop says stop and return to alerts only.

10. _____ **Setup:** A strong pivot like MHP breaks with bad confluence. The book says average in large at the next weaker pivot.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank (10 questions)

Write the missing word or words on the line.

1. Rocket Scooter's setup help path: Discord platform setup, then _____.

2. VWAP plus or minus RI is the same principle as DD bands, but _____.

3. Half-gap is the _____ between prior close and open.

4. A futures gap exists when the futures market shuts down and _____.

5. CME updates margin requirements at the end of every _____.

6. A two-zone VARIS trade is a _____.

7. MHP is based on the maximum _____ exposure for dealer-hedged options.

8. A host said "a lot of times ES will lead _____."

9. If confluence flips against you mid-trade, _____.

10. Use resilience as context, ARB as timing, and levels as _____.

Part 4: Multiple Choice (10 questions)

Circle the letter of the best answer.

1. What does the platform publish?

A. RI numbers, DD, overnight and dynamic levels, HV pivots, scanners

B. Trade signals with guaranteed results

C. Prop-firm rules

D. Your P&L

2. What is “containment” in Chapter 03?

A. A volume spike

B. A prop rule

C. A stop order

D. Price tending to respect VWAP plus or minus RI distances

3. What did Matt say about gap-fill and index value?

A. Index value never changes

B. Gaps never fill

C. There is more to index value than just the gap-fill arbitrage

D. Gap-fill is all that matters

4. Which order is the zone ladder?

A. Lambo, yacht, Honda, retirement

B. Honda, Lambo, yacht, retirement

C. Yacht, Honda, Lambo, retirement

D. Retirement, Honda, yacht, Lambo

5. Which is the first step of the mechanical backbone?

A. Pick your level family

B. Chase the move

C. Ask for a signal

D. Double size

6. What figures did Matt quote as a rule of thumb on a flat-open day?

A. 100% close inside

B. 75% and 90%

C. About 88% of days close between the green lines, 4% break up, 8% below

D. 50% and 50%

7. How should “in reality we don’t know why” shape your description of the overnight estimate?

A. Claim a precise mechanism

B. Ignore overnight levels

C. Treat it as a prop rule

D. Describe the cause with humility; it is uncertain

8. Setup: Price touches a yellow line, sits below VWAP, and ARB is negative, and you want to go long. How should you grade it?

A. Strong because yellow lines always hold

B. Strong; full size

C. No grade needed

D. Weak or mixed; small or skip

9. Setup: You are long from VWAP aiming at the upper inner band. What community name fits, and where might invalidation go?

A. A yacht; stop at the outer band

B. A Honda; invalidation beyond VWAP

C. A retirement trade; no stop

D. A catalyst; no plan

10. Setup: A classmate wants a “MES-only Rocket Scooter system” from this book. What is the honest answer?

A. Micros need no RI

B. Use NQ’s RI on MES

C. The corpus has about 30 hits and no micros curriculum; the book will not invent one

D. Here is a full MES system

Part 5: Essay (10 questions)

Answer in full sentences. Use only what the textbook teaches.

1. Explain the difference between the platform, the strategy, and community overlays, and how they come together on a trading day.

2. Explain how resilience relates to gap-fill and why the book adds a direction caution.

3. Describe how to manage a trade from entry to exit using Chapters 07 and 10.

4. Explain how ARB works and how it is used with resilience and levels.

5. Describe the day checklist and how it ties the book together.

6. Explain why RI must be pulled fresh each day and from the correct instrument row.

7. Explain predicted high-volume pivots and why confluence upgrades a rocket touch.

8. Describe the VWAP session anchor and how it changes VARIS.

9. Explain the minimum viable tool stack and what to do on a stuck day.

10. Explain how the textbook separates quoted teaching from its own suggestions, with three examples.

Glossary

All key terms from Chapters 00 to 15, merged and in alphabetical order. The chapter number shows where the term is taught.

A

- **A+ / B+ setup** — Grading words from the streams: strong pivots with confluence are A+; open/close/half-gap taps are “coin flip with a little bit of confluence.” (Ch. 09)
- **Accelerated risk range** — A stream name for futures moving farther from the stocks than the RI “rubber band” allows (one overnight clip). (Ch. 12)
- **Active trading day rule** — A direct-funded program rule a host contrasted with the traditional consistency rule (require some profit per day; a windfall just raises later days’ target). Firm-specific; verify. (Ch. 11)
- **ARB** — Confluence / scalp tell; often tied to half-gap behavior in stocks. (Ch. 13)
- **ASR** — Automatic speech recognition (YouTube captions); imperfect for trading jargon. (Ch. 00)

B

- **Bookmap confluence** — Order-flow overlay answering how heavy a level is. (Ch. 13)

C

- **Carrot / expand control** — UI control at the bottom of the platform used to open the RI/DD table. (Ch. 02)

- **Catalyst** — Matt's word for a sudden-event move of more than one risk interval. (Ch. 06)
- **Catalyst / "CAD active" (as captioned)** — Sudden-event move of more than one RI (catalyst); the "CAD/cat active" wording is a caption artifact whose exact meaning is not settled in the corpus. (Ch. 11)
- **Cleaner tape (as taught)** — Stream language that overnight can be cleaner than NY — situational, not absolute. (Ch. 12)
- **Confluence** — Agreement among independent reads (level + VWAP side + ARB/resilience, etc.) that grades size. (Ch. 01) / Agreement among independent reads (level + VWAP + ARB/resilience ± order flow). (Ch. 09)
- **Consistency rule (prop)** — Industry constraint on how much of a target can be made in one day — firm-specific. (Ch. 11)
- **Containment** — Price tending to respect VWAP ± RI distances (dynamic) or DD (static). (Ch. 03)

D

- **Day example numbers** — Stream callouts like NQ~288 / ES~70 that must not be frozen as defaults. (Ch. 06)
- **Day-shape** — Simplified overnight → open → mid → late pattern of habits, not a rigid checklist. (Ch. 01)
- **DD column / DD bands** — Static RI-based daily pivots published beside RI. (Ch. 02)
- **DD vs VARIS** — Static daily RI pivots vs dynamic VWAP-centered RI distances. (Ch. 07)
- **Dynamic hedge pressure** — Rocket Scooter's overnight hedge-pressure level; an estimate of dealer positioning while the options market is closed (Ch. 12). (Ch. 08)

- **Dynamic hedge pressure (overnight)** — Overnight hedge-pressure estimate; replaced at 9:30 by the open-data-based MHP/WHP calculation. (Ch. 12)

E

- **End-of-day review** — Judgment review of process, not only P&L. (Ch. 15)
- **Equities gap vs futures gap** — Equities gap: ~4:00 p.m. ET close to 9:30 open. Futures gap: Globex close to Globex reopen. “Gap fill” in resilience talk is the equities gap. (Ch. 05)
- **ES / NQ divergence** — Indexes disagree on fill, half-gap, or reclaim timing — compare before sizing. (Ch. 14)
- **EST trade** — Stream label (“every single time”) for a trade taken at a strong pivot such as MHP; the 75% without / 90% with confluence claim is the speaker’s own framing. (Ch. 08)

F

- **Float at half-gap** — Hold / build language when confluence supports staying at the midpoint. (Ch. 04)
- **Futures data connection** — Rocket Scooter shows futures only with futures data from a connected brokerage; named on stream as a CQG connection. (Ch. 14)

G

- **Gamma / dealer hedge note** — Teaching rationale for HV pivots — not a full options course. (Ch. 08)

- **Gap-fill** — Return of price toward prior close / gap reference, closing the opening gap. (Ch. 05)
- **Gap-fill predictor framing** — On-stream name for resilience ("my gap fill predictor"); a polarity read, not a guarantee. (Ch. 05)
- **Gap-fill scalp** — Small, structure-based attempt to capture fill without needing a full-session plan. (Ch. 05)
- **Gap structure** — The space between prior close and open in which half-gap and fill live. (Ch. 04)
- **Globex / overnight session** — Electronic futures hours outside the U.S. cash equity session. (Ch. 12)

H

- **Half-gap** — Midpoint between prior close and session open; also Friday close → Sunday open for new week. (Ch. 04)
- **Hedge pressure (HP)** — Related pivot family (weekly / dynamic / overnight variants). (Ch. 08)
- **Honda** — Band-to-band trade from one VARIS level to the next. (Ch. 07)
- **Honda entry** — VARIS band-to-band initiation. (Ch. 10)

I

- **Implied value (ARB)** — Index value recomputed after allowing stocks that have begun to move to complete their calculated move; ARB compares it with where futures trade now. (Ch. 13)
- **Index divergence** — One index fills while another holds — compare before sizing. (Ch. 05)
- **Inner / outer** — ~Half RI / full RI from VWAP (±0.5 / ±1.0). (Ch. 07)

- **Interval Lab** — Community tool for plotting VARIS bands; needs today's RI from Rocket Scooter. (Ch. 07)
- **Invalidation** — Price condition that cancels the thesis (often beyond VWAP or through the level). (Ch. 10)

L

- **Lambo / yacht** — Two-zone and three-zone VARIS trades on the same ladder as Honda (one zone) and retirement (four zones). (Ch. 07)
- **Leading indicator (ARB)** — The stream's word for ARB because it reads a move that has not happened yet. (Ch. 13)
- **Line of interest** — Textbook phrase for VWAP's role as magnet and bias hinge in this playbook. (Ch. 03)
- **Location vs filter** — Level supplies where; confluence tools supply whether/how large. (Ch. 09)

M

- **Margin-stress framing** — Teaching that ~1 RI from a reference approaches margin-call-class distance. (Ch. 06)
- **Market avoidance** — Choosing not to trade when conditions fail your filters. (Ch. 11)
- **Max cutoff** — A fixed dollar loss limit worked out in price range before sizing (a host's 2026-09-16 example: $300). (Ch. 10)
- **Mechanical backbone** — Alert at chosen level family → wait → decide with confluence → size accordingly. (Ch. 10)
- **MES / MNQ** — Micros sharing RI family with ES/NQ; thin unique curriculum. (Ch. 14)

- **MHP** — Monthly hedge-pressure line; strong planned pivot in boot-camp examples. (Ch. 08)
- **Minimum size until edge** — Habit of staying small while learning what actually works for you. (Ch. 11)
- **Minimum viable stack** — Levels + RI, VWAP/VARIS, gap marks, ARB/resilience. (Ch. 13)
- **Mismatch tell** — ARB and price disagreeing — a cue to reassess. (Ch. 13)
- **Mixed confluence** — Partial agreement — usually small size or skip, not full risk. (Ch. 09)

O

- **Open drive** — Opening impulse trade; stream hosts often avoid it as a default — limited corpus. (Ch. 14)
- **Overnight / dynamic levels** — Session-pre or overnight HV/HP lines that must refresh before you invent marks. (Ch. 02) / RS HV/HP marks published for overnight use; must refresh correctly. (Ch. 12)
- **Overnight MHP vs day MHP** — Related but not interchangeable marks — clarify which you are trading. (Ch. 12)

P

- **Partial / runner** — Take some off at structure; leave a remainder if thesis intact. (Ch. 10)
- **Platform vs strategy** — Platform publishes numbers/lines; strategy is how you wait, filter, and size. (Ch. 01)

- **Polarity (resilience)** — Above zero points up, below zero points down; whether that favors a fill depends on where price sits relative to the gap (study caution). (Ch. 05)
- **Pre-trade checklist** — Seven-item stack from RI through sized stop/target. (Ch. 15)
- **Predicted vs prior volume** — RS aims to forecast where volume will appear; classical profiles use history. (Ch. 08)
- **Pure S/R** — Trading half-gaps (and yellows) as support/resistance without the full confluence stack. (Ch. 04)

R

- **RARI** — Platform column label for risk-interval numbers. (Ch. 06)
- **RARI / RI column** — Platform table field holding today's risk-interval number per instrument. (Ch. 02)
- **Resilience** — Strength / polarity read (above zero up, below zero down); Matt calls it his gap-fill predictor. (Ch. 13)
- **Retirement trade** — Larger outer-to-outer / full-RI-class ambition in community language. (Ch. 07)
- **Risk interval (RI)** — Per-instrument, day-refreshed distance from CME-margin-style math; not a std-dev. (Ch. 06)
- **Rocket Scooter** — Platform plus playbook: HV pivots, RI, HP/MHP, gap tools, strength reads. (Ch. 01)
- **Rocket / yellow / HV level** — Predicted high-volume pivot published by Rocket Scooter. (Ch. 08)

S

- **Session anchor** — The start time VWAP (and therefore VARIS) is calculated from, e.g. 6:00 p.m. Globex open or 9:30 New York. (Ch. 07)
- **Session / overnight handling** — Whether overnight volume is included in VWAP; changes VARIS geometry. (Ch. 03)
- **Session practice template** — Overnight → pre-cash → first hour → midday → late day focus table. (Ch. 14)
- **Size ladder** — Normal → medium → small → sit out as confluence quality fades. (Ch. 09)
- **Static RI (DD)** — One RI above and below the prior close, set at the end of the session from CME margin data; the stream phrase is “based on the previous day’s close.” (Ch. 06)
- **Stuck→clip map** — Table mapping confusion topics to timestamped Watch links. (Ch. 15)

T

- **Thick / thin topic** — Well-covered vs limited-evidence concepts in the year-one index. (Ch. 00)
- **Thick vs thin practice** — Prioritize strong corpus topics; label thin ones. (Ch. 15)

V

- **VARIS** — Dynamic RI bands around VWAP (ASR often mishears as varus/various/Varys). (Ch. 07)
- **VerbonZone** — Public study shelf for Rocket Scooter lookups, lectures, and this textbook. (Ch. 00)

- **VWAP** — Volume-weighted average price; center line / line of interest for the session. (Ch. 03)

W

- **Watch link** — YouTube URL with `&t=SECONDS` landing near a teaching moment. (Ch. 00)
- **When not to press** — Standing down or reducing when confluence, tape, or session quality fails. (Ch. 11)

Y

- **Year-one corpus** — Matt mornings / Rocket Scooter streams roughly 2025-09-16 through 2026-09-18. (Ch. 00)

Appendix A — Topic Lookup Map (URLs)

One-hop VerbonZone lookups for Rocket Scooter topics.
Master index: https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt
How-to book: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter.txt
This textbook: https://verbonzone.com/rocket-scooter-textbook.txt

Sample window: ~2025-09-16 to 2026-09-18. Auto-captions imperfect.

Topics → URLs

Topic key	~Hits	Lookup URL
rocket-scooter	4857	https://verbonzone.com/rs-rocket-scooter.txt
half-gap	1444	https://verbonzone.com/rs-half-gap.txt
gap-fill	1151	https://verbonzone.com/rs-gap-fill.txt
risk-management	1057	https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-management.txt
arb-tool	992	https://verbonzone.com/rs-arb-tool.txt
risk-interval	985	https://verbonzone.com/rs-risk-interval.txt
confluence	901	https://verbonzone.com/rs-confluence.txt
vwap	842	https://verbonzone.com/rs-vwap.txt
volume-hv	838	https://verbonzone.com/rs-volume-hv.txt
entry-exit	540	https://verbonzone.com/rs-entry-exit.txt
es-nq	443	https://verbonzone.com/rs-es-nq.txt

Topic key	~Hits	Lookup URL
platform-setup	436	https://verbonzone.com/rs-platform-setup.txt
overnight-globex	394	https://verbonzone.com/rs-overnight-globex.txt
options-levels	351	https://verbonzone.com/rs-options-levels.txt
varis-bands	245	https://verbonzone.com/rs-varis-bands.txt
rocket-level	198	https://verbonzone.com/rs-rocket-level.txt
open-drive	54	https://verbonzone.com/rs-open-drive.txt
prop-rules	34	https://verbonzone.com/rs-prop-rules.txt
mes-mnq	30	https://verbonzone.com/rs-mes-mnq.txt

Textbook chapter → primary hops

Chapter	Primary lookups
01 What is RS	rs-rocket-scooter.txt
02 Platform	rs-platform-setup.txt, rs-risk-interval.txt
03 VWAP	rs-vwap.txt, rs-varis-bands.txt
04 Half-gap	rs-half-gap.txt, lecture-half-gap.txt
05 Gap-fill	rs-gap-fill.txt
06 RI	rs-risk-interval.txt
07 VARIS	rs-varis-bands.txt
08 Rocket/HV	rs-rocket-level.txt, rs-volume-hv.txt, rs-options-levels.txt
09 Confluence	rs-confluence.txt

Chapter	Primary lookups
10 Entries/exits	rs-entry-exit.txt
11 Risk	rs-risk-management.txt, rs-prop-rules.txt
12 Overnight	rs-overnight-globex.txt
13 ARB	rs-arb-tool.txt
14 Instruments	rs-es-nq.txt, rs-mes-mnq.txt, rs-open-drive.txt
15 Checklist	rs-lookup.txt
Study Guide / Glossary	(none; review of Ch. 00–15)

Related VerbonZone notes (checked 2026-10-01)

- DD-band notes from a stream: https://verbonzone.com/dd-bands.txt
- Operations notes (dated RI readings, definition card, “usual six” studies): https://verbonzone.com/ops.txt
- Half-gap lecture page: https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt

How Grok Bot / students use these

1. Open rs-lookup.txt or the topic file directly.
2. Read one-line + book hop.
3. Use Watch links if a clip helps.
4. Return to the matching textbook chapter for objectives and judgment questions.

Appendix B — Lecture Pages

Video-book subject pages package a short how-to plus curated Watch packs (model: half-gap).

Status checked: 2026-10-01 (HTTP header check of the live site).

Live

Subject	URL	Status	Notes
Half-gap	https://verbonzone.com/lecture-half-gap.txt	Exists (HTTP 200)	Sample #1: definition, how-to, 8 Watch clips across months, student path, ASR note

Not published

On 2026-10-01 I checked the likely lecture page names for the subjects below on the live site. No page with a `lecture-` file name exists yet for any of them (each check returned “not found”). They have `rs-*.txt` lookups and a chapter in this book, but no dedicated lecture page:

- Gap-fill
- VWAP
- Risk interval / VARIS
- Rocket levels / HV
- Confluence
- Entries / exits
- Risk management

- Overnight / Globex
- ARB / resilience
- Platform setup
- ES / NQ (instruments)
- Micros, open drive, prop rules (thin topics; see Chapter 14)

This book does not promise dates. When a new lecture page goes live, check https://verbonzone.com/rs-lookup.txt before assuming it exists. Do not link to a lecture page that you have not opened.

How to read a lecture page

1. One-liner
2. Short how-to
3. Lecture pack — Watch (curated clips, different months)
4. Related lectures / hops
5. Student path
6. Notes (ASR, curation)

Half-gap is the template; Chapter 04 expands that lecture into full chapter form.

Appendix C — Chapter-to-Watch Index

One “start here” Watch link per chapter, plus the number of Watch links in that chapter. Links use auto-caption timestamps; scrub a few seconds if a clip lands off. Open the full Watch list inside each chapter for the rest.

Ch.	Chapter	Watch links	Start here
00	Front Matter: How to Use This Textbook	3	Platform identity / HV pivots rundown (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vO-weiuIynI&t=13693
01	What Is Rocket Scooter	6	Predictable HV pivots — orange/green RI framing (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12118
02	Platform Setup Essentials	7	Where to find platform setup / tech support after signup (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jE6Pbo44sjA&t=12202
03	VWAP as a Line of Interest	7	VWAP ± RI = same principle as DD band; containment (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pfh3-n4auSc&t=2581
04	Half-Gap and Gap Structure	8	DEFINITION / STRUCTURE (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tP6y6FfHHvE&t=3541

Ch.	Chapter	Watch links	Start here
05	Gap-Fill	10	Resilience as gap-fill predictor + liquidity (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QwwTcGI8o6w&t=3191
06	Risk Interval (RI)	13	RI origin — reverse engineered CME SPAN (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GlDw0b6xhgc&t=10908
07	VARIS Bands (VWAP ± RI)	16	VARIS zone vs DD — dynamic RI around VWAP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oNr7tlCHCpY&t=13143
08	Rocket Levels, HV / Volume	12	Orange line = predictable HV pivot (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oCw6abQSxcY&t=12118
09	Confluence	10	Lose confluence → normal to medium to small to sit out (2025-12): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tKnManUmpQ8&t=5161
10	Entries, Exits, and Trade Management	11	Mechanical Rocket Scooter levels plan (alert at MHP) (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XtmZkpckT8Q&t=8878
11	Risk Management and When Not to Press	13	Managing position size / risk / volatility (2025-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sDsckyOfsIM&t=6759

Ch.	Chapter	Watch links	Start here
12	Overnight / Globex Context	12	Overnight levels onto the chart (2026-09): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HFhCroaUSU4&t=735
13	ARB and Resilience Tools	13	What ARB actually does — locating sellers (2026-02): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NrNnj-eP3wA&t=5224
14	Instruments and Sessions (ES / NQ / MES Notes)	14	ES already ran; short NQ area off VWAP (2026-08): https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1KMwZ9U9t2I&t=3482
15	Putting It Together (Day Checklist)	0	—

Appendix D: Answer Key

Answers for every Chapter Test, Spiral Test, and Final Test in this book. Matching answers pair each numbered term with its letter. True or false answers give a short reason for every false statement. Multiple choice answers give the letter. Essay answers list the key points a full answer should cover; a good answer explains them in the student's own words and stays inside what the book teaches.

Chapter 01 Test: What Is Rocket Scooter

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-G, 3-F, 4-C, 5-I, 6-A, 7-J, 8-E, 9-H, 10-D

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. On stream he walks through which level, what confluence, and what size. It is not a black box.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. RI is tied to CME margin math and is not a standard deviation.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. The chapter says open-drive longs are not a default habit (see Ch. 14).
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It is listed as one of the thinner topics.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. The backbone is alert at a level, decide with confluence, and size small until edge shows.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** average
- **2.** high-volume (HV)
- **3.** hedge
- **4.** margin
- **5.** VARIS
- **6.** close
- **7.** size
- **8.** small
- **9.** confluence
- **10.** micros

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-D, 5-B, 6-C, 7-C, 8-A, 9-C, 10-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Platform publishes numbers and lines (RI, DD, overnight and dynamic HP, MHP, HV pivots, scanners); strategy is how you use them (wait at a level, read confluence, trade band-to-band or gap logic, manage risk); overlays are VARIS, ARB, Bookmap as optional confluence; one correct example of each.
2. Overnight: levels and RI refresh; into the open: gap, half-gap, DD and MHP, VWAP; first hour: gap-fill vs hold half-gap vs VWAP reclaim or lose; mid-session: rocket levels and VARIS Honda with ARB and resilience as filters; late: same levels, respect confluence flips; built from habits that repeat, not a script Matt reads every morning.

3. They still give location (support and resistance); shows the core of the method is levels; the full stack adds VWAP, VARIS, confluence; a rough-day fallback.
4. Strong: VWAP plus RI and VARIS, half-gap and gap-fill, rocket and HV levels, confluence sizing, ARB and resilience, live entry management; thin: formal prop compliance, open-drive theory, micros-only setup; practice strong topics; label thin topics as limited evidence and do not invent rules.
5. Matt shows which level, what confluence, and what size; the student must learn judgment, not copy signals; confluence grades size; the mechanical backbone keeps decisions in the trader's hands.
6. Platform supplies numbers and lines; strategy is waiting, filtering with confluence, and sizing; signals without size and judgment miss the method; not a black box.
7. VWAP volume-weighted average price, center for VARIS; RI margin-call distance, not std-dev, per instrument; VARIS dynamic half and full RI around VWAP; DD static RI pivots; half-gap midpoint open and prior close; rocket predicted HV pivots; MHP and HP hedge-pressure lines; ARB and resilience strength reads.
8. The before and into-the-open steps; overnight and dynamic levels and RI refresh first; the open plan uses gap, half-gap, DD, MHP; wrong or missing marks spoil later steps.
9. Alert at level; decide with confluence; size small until edge; FOMO pushes size without agreement; confluence is agreement of independent reads.
10. Not a quoted rule; book separates its suggestions from Matt's teaching; students should know the source of each idea; honesty about evidence.

Chapter 01 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. It is a synthesized student textbook, not a transcript dump.
- **3.** False. They are day examples. Pull today's RI from the platform.
- **4.** True.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** VARIS
- **2.** micros
- **3.** thin
- **4.** not

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-B, 3-B, 4-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. A student textbook with objectives, key terms, references, summaries, judgment questions; not a transcript dump; repeating ideas merged into one explanation; backed by Watch clips and VerbonZone hops.
2. Captions mishear VARIS and garble tickers and drop words; quotes may be lightly cleaned or paraphrased; prose uses correct terms; scrub a few seconds if a clip seems wrong.
3. Limited index hits; chapters mark limited evidence and do not invent rules; prop rules, open-drive theory, micros-only curriculum.
4. Not financial advice and futures carry risk of loss; RI numbers change, pull today's RI, stream numbers are day examples; thin topics stay thin.

Chapter 02 Test: Platform Setup Essentials

Part 1: Matching

1-C, 2-F, 3-I, 4-H, 5-J, 6-G, 7-A, 8-D, 9-E, 10-B

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. VARIS needs the RI number from the platform (or a streamer or Discord).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It teaches how the numbers are used, not every install path.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. It is architecture context, not a setup step.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It comes from repeated stream talk and is not a single mandated template.
- **9.** False. If levels are missing at the bell, wait rather than inventing them.
- **10.** True.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** carrot
- **2.** setup
- **3.** tech support
- **4.** RARI
- **5.** static
- **6.** wait
- **7.** MHP
- **8.** refreshed

- **9.** VWAP
- **10.** order-flow

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D, 5-D, 6-A, 7-C, 8-B, 9-A, 10-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. RI numbers per instrument (RARI / RI and DD columns); overnight and dynamic levels and hedge-pressure lines; HV and rocket pivots; scanners and feeds; VARIS needs today's RI number to plot.
2. Open the platform; click the carrot / expand control at the bottom; open the table; go to the risk interval / DD band section; read the RARI / RI column for each instrument; refresh when data rolls.
3. Prefer refreshed overnight MHP and levels; wait instead of inventing; static DD and RI from prior close still exist; invented levels give false precision.
4. VWAP with known session handling; VARIS half and full (optional 2x) RI; DD bands; yellow HV lines, MHP, weekly or dynamic HP; half-gap and gap-fill marks; optional Bookmap; not a single mandated template.
5. Matt pointed to Discord platform setup then tech support; no single dedicated walkthrough video at the time; many index hits are troubleshooting; this chapter teaches how numbers enter the trade plan.
6. Invented lines look exact but have no platform basis; real levels refresh from data; wait instead; static DD and RI still available.
7. RARI / RI column in the risk interval / DD band section; data rolls; new number after refresh; stale number misplaces VARIS.
8. Discord platform setup then tech support for access; then carrot at bottom, open table, risk interval / DD band section, RARI / RI column for each instrument.

9. Hits count mentions; many platform-setup hits are live troubleshooting; not a beginner install guide; book teaches how numbers are used; Discord-first for install.
10. Indications computed on server and streamed to platform; security, not easily reverse-engineered on the client; context only; nothing to configure.

Chapter 02 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. VARIS is a community overlay around VWAP.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Yellow lines and half-gaps can still be traded as support and resistance.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** 2026-09-18
- **2.** high-volume (HV)
- **3.** close
- **4.** size

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-C, 3-C, 4-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. RI changes daily and per instrument; stream numbers like NQ about 288 and ES about 70 are day examples; pull today’s RI from the platform.

2. Yellow lines and half-gaps as support and resistance; levels are the core; half-gap and HV levels are thick, well-evidenced topics; size and judgment still apply.
3. Alert at a level; decide with confluence; size small until edge shows; avoids inventing levels and FOMO.
4. Ideas repeating across mornings are merged; links land near the teaching moment; watch with the same marks Matt is discussing; more focused than one random stream end to end.

Chapter 03 Test: VWAP as a Line of Interest

Part 1: Matching

1-H, 2-F, 3-D, 4-B, 5-G, 6-E, 7-I, 8-C, 9-J, 10-A

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. They are half and full risk intervals, not standard-deviation bands.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Targets are often the next VARIS band, half-gap, or rocket level, not VWAP alone.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. He does not always use that phrase; the behavior on stream treats VWAP as magnet and bias hinge.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. Stronger reads stack VWAP with half-gap, VARIS, rocket levels, or ARB and resilience.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. The chapter lists “long bias harder” when consolidating under a flat VWAP while other indexes disagree.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** weighted
- **2.** interest
- **3.** hinge
- **4.** DD
- **5.** beyond
- **6.** session
- **7.** lose
- **8.** resilience
- **9.** deviation
- **10.** overnight

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-C, 3-C, 4-A, 5-A, 6-D, 7-B, 8-B, 9-D, 10-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. VWAP is the center line VARIS hangs on; reclaim or lose is a live decision; consolidating under or holding above changes aggressiveness; stops near VWAP; magnet behavior.
2. Community indicator plots VWAP plus or minus RI; same principle as DD but dynamic; containment called uncanny; flanks are half and full RI, not std-dev; size smaller if price keeps falling through lower side.
3. VARIS depends on VWAP; overnight inclusion changes VWAP and so the bands; compare session settings before comparing bands with a streamer.
4. Short or fade into reclaim area off VWAP; long bias harder under flat VWAP when other indexes disagree; stops a little beyond VWAP; targets at next band, half-gap, or rocket level.

5. Mark session VWAP with known overnight setting; mark half and full RI bands; journal only above, below, reclaim, lose; then add one confluence read and compare; builds judgment before adding tools.
6. VWAP is line of interest, magnet, bias hinge; structure off VWAP gives location; random tick has no level; still needs confluence and a stop beyond VWAP.
7. Chapter lists long bias harder when consolidating under flat VWAP while other indexes disagree; VWAP side changes aggressiveness; confirm with structure.
8. Containment failing; band not holding; chapter says size goes smaller; trade smaller when price falls below the band and keeps falling.
9. VWAP plus half-gap or gap-fill; VWAP plus VARIS inner and outer; VWAP plus rocket level; VWAP plus ARB or resilience sign; explain one with location and filter roles.
10. Columns or rows for above, below, reclaim, lose; time stamps; no new indicators; after an hour add one confluence read and compare; builds judgment.

Chapter 03 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-C, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. It is a thin topic (Ch. 00, 01).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Stream callouts are day examples; pull today’s RI from the platform.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** RARI
- **2.** Discord
- **3.** day
- **4.** ASR (automatic speech recognition)

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Day starts with overnight levels and RI refreshing; if levels are late, wait and do not invent; static DD and RI still exist; the open plan depends on correct marks.
2. VARIS is a community indicator around VWAP (Ch. 01); it needs the RI number from the platform (Ch. 02); platform supplies numbers, overlays use them.
3. Thin topics are labeled limited evidence and not invented; prop rules, open drive, micros; platform setup has many hits but many are troubleshooting, not an install guide.
4. Read the chapter; open Watch links with chart open; scrub if a clip is off; use rs-lookup and Appendix A for hops; remember ASR caveat.

Chapter 04 Test: Half-Gap and Gap Structure

Part 1: Matching

1-H, 2-F, 3-B, 4-G, 5-A, 6-I, 7-E, 8-C, 9-J, 10-D

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.

- **2.** False. It uses Friday’s close and Sunday’s open.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. The chapter says ES and NQ can disagree; one may tag half-gap while the other does not.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. He said he does not really take them with only resilience unless he has something else; confluence first.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. The usual frame runs from the prior ~4:00 p.m. Eastern close to the 9:30 cash open.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Random open, close, or half-gap taps without confluence deserve smaller size or a skip.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** midpoint
- **2.** Sunday
- **3.** fail
- **4.** build
- **5.** close
- **6.** S/R (support and resistance)
- **7.** positive
- **8.** tagged
- **9.** gap-fill
- **10.** ARB

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B, 5-C, 6-A, 7-B, 8-D, 9-B, 10-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Half-gap is the midpoint between prior session close and today's open; new-week half-gap is Friday close to Sunday open; mark prior close, mark open, mark midpoint; also mark full fill when the gap matters.
2. Mark prior close; mark open; mark midpoint; mark full fill; ask fill, float, or fail; add confluence before sizing; the question forces a plan for each outcome.
3. Positive resilience often supports float or build; negative resilience means treat as resistance or gap-fill fuel; ARB negative while price rises can mean stocks tagged half-gap; still needs other confluence.
4. Pure S/R still gives location; Matt trades it when tools are down; random taps without confluence deserve smaller size or a skip; he does not trade with resilience alone.
5. One may tag half-gap while the other does not; compare indexes before sizing a market opinion; disagreement lowers confidence and size.
6. Prior close; open; midpoint; full fill; fill, float, or fail; add confluence; hesitation over which open or which close; know your reference.
7. No confluence; resilience only; ES and NQ disagree; random open, close, half-gap tap; size down or skip.
8. Day: prior session close to today's open; new week: Friday close to Sunday open; same midpoint idea; different reference points.
9. Region between prior close and open; half-gap in middle; full fill returns to prior close; usual frame prior ~4:00 p.m. ET close to 9:30 cash open; Globex open adds timing language.

10. Read one-liner and how-to; watch definition clip; if needed pure S/R or confluence clips; caution clip as risk reminder before size; prevents overconfidence.

Chapter 04 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-D, 3-A, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. It says wait rather than invent them.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Yellow lines and half-gaps can still be traded as support and resistance.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** DD
- **2.** carrot (expand control)
- **3.** strategy
- **4.** Varys

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. VWAP is the center line; RI read from RARI column; bands at half and full RI above and below VWAP; overnight handling changes the picture.
2. Platform: RI, DD, overnight and dynamic HP, MHP, HV pivots, scanners; you decide: wait at level, read confluence, size, stop and target.

3. RI changes daily (Ch. 00); refresh when data rolls (Ch. 02); cached wrong-day MHP; invented or stale marks give false precision.
4. Confluence is agreement of independent reads; VWAP stacks with half-gap, VARIS, rocket levels, ARB and resilience; confluence grades size.

Chapter 05 Test: Gap-Fill

Part 1: Matching

1-C, 2-H, 3-E, 4-A, 5-I, 6-J, 7-F, 8-D, 9-G, 10-B

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Resilience talk and the Rocket Scooter indicators mean the equities gap.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. The book calls that shorthand a rough summary, not a law; direction depends on where price sits relative to the gap.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. It says plainly that it is not a claim that every gap fills.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It rests on a single clip; do not build a system on it.
- **9.** False. Weak confluence means small or skip even if the geometric fill looks obvious.
- **10.** True.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** prior
- **2.** close
- **3.** 9:30

- **4.** reopens
- **5.** calculation
- **6.** blind
- **7.** up
- **8.** red
- **9.** mentions
- **10.** wait

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-A, 3-D, 4-D, 5-C, 6-C, 7-A, 8-B, 9-D, 10-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Futures gap: market shuts and reopens (Globex), CME calculation sets reopen; equities gap: ~4:00 p.m. ET close to 9:30 open, meant in resilience talk; write down which gap before marking a target.
2. Matt calls resilience his gap-fill predictor; polarity above zero up, below zero down; whether it favors fill depends on price relative to gap; 2025-11 positive example and 2025-10 negative example; no single sign rule; confirm on your chart.
3. Scalp is small and structure-based without a full-session plan; main plan when confluence and wider day story support; confluence and day story decide; weak confluence means small or skip.
4. Big-gap technique is one clip, a newer development not in the videos; hits count mentions not lessons; structured teaching rests on a handful of clips; treat details as habits not a rulebook.
5. Chapter is not a claim every gap fills; price can hold or fail; ES and NQ may split; gap-fill is not the whole of index value; size by confluence.

6. Scalp when structure supports but day story is mixed or confluence is weak; main plan when confluence and wider story agree; size by confluence.
7. Index divergence; compare before sizing; wait or size down; do not assume NQ must follow.
8. Resilience positive, open could go up to fill the gap all the way, S&P did; positive points up toward prior close above; doubt if ES and NQ split, weak confluence, price location unclear; not a law.
9. Prior close, session or Globex open, half-gap, nearest rocket, MHP, DD, VWAP; ask whether fill is the plan, a partial objective, or a trap if confluence disagrees.
10. Gap-fill as objective after VWAP break and retest short or resilience-led open plan; weak confluence small or skip; sister chapters 10, 12, 13; 2026-09-09 exit near fill after VWAP break and retest.

Chapter 05 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. They are half and full risk intervals (Ch. 03).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Overnight inclusion changes VWAP and therefore VARIS appearance.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** fail
- **2.** hinge

- **3.** wait
- **4.** VerbonZone (verbonzone.com)

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-C, 3-C, 4-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. VWAP side as bias hinge; half-gap as location; pairing both is a stronger read; add ARB and resilience; size by confluence.
2. Yellow lines and half-gaps as pure S/R; Matt still trades them; usually with smaller size; random taps without confluence deserve size down.
3. VWAP overnight handling changes VARIS; RI must be today's refreshed number; otherwise bands differ for setup reasons.
4. Book labels limited evidence and avoids inventing rules; half-gap is thick but outcomes vary; ES and NQ can disagree; compare before forming a market opinion.

Chapter 06 Test: Risk Interval (RI)

Part 1: Matching

1-J, 2-E, 3-G, 4-B, 5-I, 6-C, 7-A, 8-F, 9-D, 10-H

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. The chapter says plainly that RI is not a standard-deviation band.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. There is no "MES = 288" rule; 288 was an NQ example, and numbers are day examples only.
- **5.** True.

- **6.** False. It is based on the previous day's close and calculated at the end of the market close.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It moved by nearly nine points in the examples.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Moves of more than one RI are discussed as unusually large; Matt calls them catalysts.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** margin
- **2.** margin
- **3.** end
- **4.** close
- **5.** day
- **6.** DD
- **7.** VARIS
- **8.** catalyst
- **9.** fresh
- **10.** ES

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C, 5-B, 6-A, 7-C, 8-A, 9-D, 10-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Rocket Scooter number from CME margin-style math refreshed from prior-day or end-of-day data; per instrument; about one RI approaches margin-stress distance; built from margin math, not price volatility statistics like Bollinger bands.

2. Based on previous day’s close; one distance above and below; calculated at end of market close from CME margin data; long or short from close near that level risks margin call; static levels are DD bands; dynamic version anchored on VWAP is VARIS.
3. Numbers drift day to day; NQ moved nearly nine points between Sept 3 and Sept 27 in examples; numbers are day examples not defaults; not an MES = 288 rule; refresh after data rolls.
4. Half and full RI build VARIS around VWAP; DD uses static RI pivots; catalysts move more than one RI; distances plotted from VWAP or static anchors.
5. Open platform and read RARI / RI; confirm the instrument row to avoid mixing NQ and ES; refresh after data rolls; plot distances from VWAP or DD anchors as method requires.
6. RI refreshed daily from end-of-day margin data; numbers drift; bands and DD move; pull fresh.
7. Bollinger is statistics on price; RI is margin-based distance from CME math; per instrument; tied to margin-call distance; used to build VARIS and DD.
8. Mixing instruments; using NQ number on ES chart; MES = 288 myth; each instrument row checked.
9. Unusually large relative to margin distance; catalyst is sudden-event move of more than one RI; margin-call class stress.
10. About 985 hits on risk-interval; definition repeats; Interval Lab install steps lighter; platform RI plus VWAP math enough to practice.

Chapter 06 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. It is Friday close to Sunday open (Ch. 04).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Weak confluence means small or skip.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** close
- **2.** interest
- **3.** DD
- **4.** playbook

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Gap is the region between prior close and open; half-gap is the midpoint; full fill returns to prior close; ask fill, float, or fail; mark both.
2. Equities gap vs futures gap give different references; resilience talk means equities gap; similarly VWAP overnight inclusion changes VARIS; both are about knowing your chart’s reference.
3. Positive resilience supports float at half-gap; negative more careful; ARB negative while price rises can mean stocks tagged half-gap; resilience called gap-fill predictor; polarity depends on gap direction.
4. Confluence grades size; weak confluence means small or skip even with obvious geometry; gap-fill not the whole of index value; not every gap fills.

Chapter 07 Test: VARIS Bands (VWAP ± RI)

Part 1: Matching

1-I, 2-E, 3-F, 4-B, 5-A, 6-G, 7-D, 8-J, 9-H, 10-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. The inner band is about half an RI; the outer band is one full RI.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It still needs the RI number.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. Its data is not shown in the corpus; treat it as unverified.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. He said a five-minute candle close outside the inner band invalidates it; wicks alone do not.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. He said he trades smaller in that case.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** VWAP
- **2.** half (0.5)
- **3.** one full (1.0)
- **4.** Honda
- **5.** yacht
- **6.** four
- **7.** called
- **8.** halfway
- **9.** reclaims

- **10.** anchors

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-B, 3-D, 4-A, 5-D, 6-C, 7-C, 8-A, 9-D, 10-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. VARIS: dynamic RI distances centered on VWAP, move with session mean; DD: static RI pivots from daily close-based math; quote “DD bands are static, VARIS bands are dynamic based around VWAP”; both can be on the same chart.
2. Inner about 0.5 RI, outer about 1.0 RI, optional 2x; Honda one zone, Lambo two, yacht three, retirement four; outer to opposite outer passes outer to inner to VWAP to inner to outer, four zones.
3. VARIS calculated from session open; at 6:00 p.m. VWAP adjusts and VARIS follows; can anchor to 9:30 New York; some platforms exclude closed-market time; check session start in settings.
4. Outer treated as stretched, market likes to revert to VWAP; trade smaller when price falls below lower band and keeps falling; stack with rocket levels and half-gap; size down when slicing without reaction.
5. From hosts on their own trades, often gold and oil, evening streams; speaker not named; halfway target, five-minute close invalidation, reclaim preference; one host one day; do not replace your own stop plan; back-test claim unverified.
6. Different anchors: DD static from prior close, VARIS dynamic around VWAP; both built from RI; answer different questions.
7. Retirement outer to opposite outer, four zones, full RI-class move; Honda one zone; larger objective needs stronger story and confluence; Honda for smaller targets.

8. Today’s RI number; VWAP session anchor and overnight handling; Interval Lab still needs RI.
9. Size down; containment failing; host trades smaller when price falls below the band and keeps falling.
10. Treat as day example; journal or replay several days; compare with your instrument; keep your own stop plan; do not adopt as a rule without evidence.

Chapter 07 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Resilience talk means the equities gap.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Numbers are day examples; pull fresh daily.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** RARI
- **2.** 9:30
- **3.** float (or build)
- **4.** containment

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-A, 3-B, 4-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Static RI is one RI above and below prior close, set at end of session from CME margin data; those levels are DD bands; platform publishes DD beside RI in the table.
2. Both prevent using the wrong reference; equities vs futures gap changes fill target; NQ vs ES RI differ; write down the reference before plotting.
3. RI comes from margin math, not statistics of price; flanks are half and full RI; containment like DD but dynamic.
4. ES and NQ can disagree at half-gap and on fills; compare before a market opinion; wait or size down.

Chapter 08 Test: Rocket Levels, HV / Volume

Part 1: Matching

1-J, 2-G, 3-H, 4-A, 5-B, 6-C, 7-D, 8-I, 9-E, 10-F

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. They are predicted HV pivots, not merely yesterday’s volume nodes.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It is their backtest claim, not a guarantee.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. Gamma is treated as why the pivots exist, not as an options curriculum.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. Disclosure stays thin by design (server-side indication).
- **9.** True.

- **10.** False. If levels are late, wait (Ch. 02, Ch. 12).

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** high
- **2.** previous
- **3.** monthly
- **4.** below
- **5.** gamma
- **6.** 5:45
- **7.** open-interest
- **8.** prior
- **9.** time
- **10.** S/R (support and resistance)

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C, 5-D, 6-C, 7-B, 8-A, 9-C, 10-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Many traders use previous volume; Rocket Scooter aims to predict where volume will be; trade reaction when price arrives; indicators underneath read bullish or bearish approach.
2. MHP monthly hedge pressure predicts high volume; based on maximum gamma exposure for dealer-hedged options; weekly HP above or below; blue line weekly gamma maximum; dynamic is overnight estimate; calculation not disclosed.
3. Published 5:45 Eastern before the market starts (2025-09-18), recalculated and out at 9:30; dynamic is overnight estimate while options market closed;

at 9:30 new monthly and weekly HP from open interest; regular-session MHP around 9:30.

4. Their backtest claim, not a guarantee; affects size, not certainty; confluence upgrades quality; humility.
5. Lone rocket can be traded as S/R; stronger with VARIS inner or outer, half-gap or gap-fill, VWAP reclaim or reject, ARB or resilience agreement; confluence upgrades size quality.
6. Levels publish from platform; late is common; invented lines have no basis; trading a touch requires real levels; Ch. 02 and 12.
7. VARIS inner or outer; half-gap or gap-fill; VWAP reclaim or reject; ARB or resilience; each is an independent read.
8. Note gamma and dealer hedge as why pivots exist; MHP based on maximum gamma exposure; not an options-chain course; focus on usage.
9. Label it as overnight; at 9:30 new MHP and WHP come from open interest; check the new day levels; do not treat overnight and day as the same.
10. Usage is solid; HV algorithm disclosure thin by design, server-side; practice marking overnight yellows plus DD and MHP, waiting for price, reading confluence; no reverse engineering.

Chapter 08 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Each instrument has its own RI (Ch. 06).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Random taps without confluence deserve smaller size or a skip.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** RI (risk interval)
- **2.** catalyst
- **3.** equities
- **4.** carrot (expand control)

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. CME margin requirements updated daily; Rocket Scooter turns them into RI; static RI from prior close gives DD; dynamic version around VWAP gives VARIS at 0.5 and 1.0 RI.
2. Half-gap: midpoint of gap, S/R, target, confluence anchor; inner band: half RI from VWAP, Honda start; both stronger with confluence; lone taps smaller.
3. Equities vs futures gap changes fill target; 6:00 p.m. vs 9:30 VWAP anchor changes bands; same chart, different references, different answers.
4. Stream RI numbers are day examples; pull today's RI; NQ moved nearly nine points in September examples; no MES = 288 rule.

Chapter 09 Test: Confluence

Part 1: Matching

1-J, 2-H, 3-I, 4-E, 5-A, 6-D, 7-F, 8-C, 9-G, 10-B

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Without a level, filters alone are rarely enough.

- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. The corpus clips do not show the formula; do not invent a scoring system.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. He called them “not A+,” a coin flip with a little bit of confluence.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. They are their framing, not a guarantee.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. If you cannot name the ingredients, you do not have confluence; you have a feeling.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** agree
- **2.** sit out
- **3.** where
- **4.** large
- **5.** Bookmap
- **6.** lead
- **7.** A+
- **8.** internals
- **9.** weak
- **10.** larger

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-D, 5-A, 6-C, 7-C, 8-A, 9-B, 10-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Independent pieces agree; chooses size more than inventing entries; level (rocket, DD, MHP, half-gap, VARIS); VWAP side; ARB and resilience; optional order flow; cross-index agreement.
2. Strong: normal or larger; weak or mixed: small or skip; ladder normal, medium, small, sit out as confluence fades; boot-camp claims are their framing.
3. Location answers where (level, e.g. half-gap or MHP); filters answer whether and how large (ARB, resilience, VWAP agreement, cross-index); filters without level rarely enough; level without filters tradeable smaller.
4. Host 2026-06-19: coin flip with a little confluence; skips open and close because of chop; A+ are strong pivots with confluence; strong pivot break means do not bet on weaker pivot; ladder drops quickly for lone tap.
5. ES and NQ often disagree on fill, half-gap, VWAP timing; agreement is extra check before market opinion; host executes on NASDAQ with ES chart up; ES at MHP while NQ in no man’s land is taken into account.
6. Level present but VWAP side and ARB disagree with a long; mixed or weak; small or skip; write the grade first.
7. Confluence is named independent reads; unnamed ingredients are a feeling; grade in writing.
8. Level stays (half-gaps and yellows); filters missing; size goes smaller and simpler; or sit out.
9. Level type; VWAP side; ARB and resilience or cross-index agreement; grade strong, mixed, weak; size to match.
10. Open taps not A+, chop; weak confluence means small or sit out; skipped trades show as missed opportunities in a journal, not as losses; process over P&L.

Chapter 09 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. The inner band is about half an RI from VWAP (Ch. 07).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. RI changes daily; NQ moved nearly nine points in the examples.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** gamma
- **2.** Lambo
- **3.** open
- **4.** line

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. DD: static RI from prior close; VARIS: dynamic RI around VWAP; yellow: predicted HV pivots; all in the same ecosystem.
2. Overnight and dynamic levels must publish and refresh; caching quirks; inventing gives false precision; static structures still exist.
3. Resilience is gap-fill predictor; polarity read; fill direction depends on gap direction; positive after gap down can mean fill up; not a law.
4. Honda one zone, Lambo two, yacht three, retirement four; example VWAP to inner or inner to outer.

Chapter 10 Test: Entries, Exits, and Trade Management

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-I, 3-J, 4-E, 5-H, 6-D, 7-F, 8-A, 9-G, 10-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. The chapter says the list is not exhaustive.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. They are day examples from the hosts, not rules.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. He said it does not mean price will reverse; a large cross, more than his stop distance, is usually his stopping point.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. That is Chapter 11; Chapter 10 stays on mechanics.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Avoid YOLOing size at MHP when confluence is negative; small lot only if taking it.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** alert
- **2.** size
- **3.** band
- **4.** reduce
- **5.** runner
- **6.** 300
- **7.** shorter

- **8.** neutral
- **9.** target
- **10.** York

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-D, 5-B, 6-A, 7-B, 8-A, 9-A, 10-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Pick level family; set alert; when price not there do not hunt; when it arrives trade plan with confluence deciding size; avoids FOMO and chasing.
2. Touch or reject of yellow, DD, MHP, half-gap; VARIS Honda; gap-fill scalp with resilience or ARB; VWAP reclaim or lose with structure; avoid YOLO at MHP with negative confluence; examples, not a complete ruleset.
3. Targets next band, half-gap, gap-fill, opposing rocket; stops beyond VWAP or invalidation side; partials at structure, runner if thesis intact; reduce on confluence flip; example runner at S&P gap fill.
4. Single host, single day; context like ARB near neutral; instrument and account differ; book refuses to call them rules; build your own stop plan.
5. Work out price range equal to dollar cutoff before building; more contracts shorten range; ties size to loss limit; other way risk is unknown until after; checklist asks dollar loss known.
6. Do nothing; don’t hunt; wait for the level; no trade is a valid outcome.
7. Invalidation beyond VWAP or invalidation side of level; first target upper inner band; host day examples halfway target; size by grade.
8. Backbone says wait at level; chasing hunts price; confluence decides size not FOMO; host would not randomly trade after missing the drive.
9. Partial locks some profit at structure; runner rides if thesis intact; reduce if confluence flips; example runner at S&P gap fill.

10. Any box with reason: level clear, VWAP side, confluence checked, size matches grade, stop and target marked; fix with written grade and alerts.

Chapter 10 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-D, 2-A, 3-B, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. They are their backtest framing, not a guarantee (Ch. 08, 09).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Weak confluence means small or skip.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** large
- **2.** MHP
- **3.** one full (1.0)
- **4.** day

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-A, 3-A, 4-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. MHP, DD, CAD active called A+ by a host; when strong pivot breaks do not bet on weaker pivot; MHP is a big mechanical level; size ladder drops.
2. Lone rocket is S/R; add VARIS, half-gap, VWAP reclaim or reject, ARB and resilience; more agreement means larger size.
3. VARIS from VWAP anchor at 6:00 p.m. or 9:30; RI must be today’s; either wrong shifts bands.

4. Yellow lines and half-gaps as pure S/R; tradeable smaller; levels are location; filters missing so size down.

Chapter 11 Test: Risk Management and When Not to Press

Part 1: Matching

1-E, 2-A, 3-I, 4-C, 5-F, 6-G, 7-D, 8-B, 9-J, 10-H

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. A host said you do not bet on a weaker pivot to stop the move; treat a break as a warning.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It does not; “CAD active” is a caption wording whose meaning is not settled.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. They are quoted figures; the book has not tested them.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It is a textbook suggestion, not a quoted rule.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Wait for platform marks or trade only pure S/R smaller.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** minimum
- **2.** volatility
- **3.** avoidance
- **4.** trend
- **5.** statistical

- **6.** 88
- **7.** 4
- **8.** risk interval (RI)
- **9.** down
- **10.** A+

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-D, 3-C, 4-A, 5-D, 6-D, 7-B, 8-B, 9-A, 10-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Stay small while learning what works; adjust size for volatility; adjust for how many confluence checks pass; size matches confluence.
2. Mixed or flipping confluence; slicing through bands without reaction; flat open or chop; open-drive longs as default; tools offline and urge to invent; string of forced trades; open, close, half-gap taps not A+.
3. Captions write CAD or cat active; 2025-10-10 called it extremely dangerous; catalyst is a move of more than one RI; may be the same idea; too garbled; no separate indicator defined.
4. Quoted rule of thumb from a flat-open day; dd-bands.txt related figures; numbers are consistent; book has not tested them; need own evidence before changing size.
5. Not trading when conditions fail filters; professional skill; protects capital; ties to size ladder sit out; ties to Ch. 15 checklist.
6. Any three: mixed or flipping confluence; slicing through bands; flat open and chop; tools offline urge to invent; string of forced trades; lone open taps.
7. Strong pivot break is a warning; do not bet on weaker pivot; negative confluence means small or skip; risk grows.

8. Stop and return to mechanical alerts only; textbook suggestion; back to level family and waiting.
9. Own testing over many days; book has not tested; quoted figure from one flat-open day; dd-bands notes related; until tested treat with humility.
10. Risk management, position management, market-trend identification; community and education framed as surviving the learning curve; verify current offerings.

Chapter 11 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Static RI is anchored on the prior close; the dynamic version is anchored on VWAP.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It is a day example, not a rule.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** retirement
- **2.** flip
- **3.** 9:30
- **4.** overnight

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-B, 3-B, 4-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Level type; VWAP side; ARB and resilience checked; size matches grade; stop and target; written grade strong, mixed, weak.
2. Honda is band-to-band; targets next band; stops beyond VWAP or invalidation side; day examples like halfway target.
3. RI table numbers; 40-point stop; $300 cutoff; five-minute close; one host or one day; not rules.
4. Overnight estimate while options closed; wait for it to publish; replaced at 9:30 by new MHP and WHP; label which version.

Chapter 12 Test: Overnight / Globex Context

Part 1: Matching

1-I, 2-F, 3-A, 4-E, 5-J, 6-D, 7-H, 8-B, 9-C, 10-G

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. They are two separate levels; label which one you trade.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. He said “in reality we don’t know why” the estimate is so strong.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. Stream commentary leans the other way, and the book calls it situational.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It follows VWAP anchored at the 6:00 p.m. session open unless you re-anchor it.
- **9.** True.

- **10.** False. He described the band “snapping,” which he calls an accelerated risk range.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** predictive
- **2.** estimate
- **3.** band
- **4.** snap
- **5.** equities
- **6.** 6:00
- **7.** refreshed
- **8.** RI (risk interval)
- **9.** choppier
- **10.** Globex

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-D, 3-B, 4-D, 5-B, 6-C, 7-A, 8-C, 9-A, 10-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Overnight and dynamic levels drawn before or as cash opens; overnight often called cleaner; overnight vs day MHP differ; gap vs Globex open in timing; futures trade when cash closed.
2. Dynamic is overnight estimate while options closed; at 9:30 open interest arrives and new MHP and WHP calculated; overnight MHP predictive model, intraday MHP at open; two separate levels; label which.
3. Futures open and stocks closed; RI keeps futures from straying far from stocks; farther can snap, accelerated risk range; drew band one RI each side; one clip.

4. Confirm refresh and wait if late; pull RI; mark prior close, Globex open, half-gap, full fill; note DD, MHP, yellows vs gap; decide if overnight or gap dominates; marks before decisions.
5. Speaker’s stated belief about other firms using estimate models; the cause is uncertain; describe with humility; do not overclaim a mechanism.
6. Wait; do not invent; use static DD and RI; check refresh; trade only pure S/R smaller or sit out.
7. Separate labels such as ON MHP and Day MHP; overnight predictive model; day at open; replace or keep both clearly.
8. Half-gap uses prior close and open; Globex open adds timing language; know which open you are using; two gaps differ.
9. Platform refresh and late overnight levels; overnight versus day version of a line; RI read; VWAP anchor at 6:00 p.m..
10. Other firms lack U.S. numbers in their sessions and use estimate models; positions hedge automatically through our session; speaker says we don’t really know why; treat as stated belief.

Chapter 12 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-D, 2-C, 3-A, 4-B

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. The formula is not shown; do not invent a scoring system.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. When price is not there, don’t hunt.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** edge
- **2.** sit out
- **3.** called
- **4.** close

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Mixed confluence, slicing, chop, tools offline, forced trades; ladder drops to small or sit out; market avoidance.
2. Pick level family and alert; wait; levels come from platform; if late, wait; no hunting.
3. Halfway target, five-minute close invalidation; ARB cross stop, 40-point stop, $300 cutoff, runner; all day examples, not rules.
4. RI from CME margin math; builds VARIS at half and full; catalyst is move over one RI; DD from static RI.

Chapter 13 Test: ARB and Resilience Tools

Part 1: Matching

1-E, 2-A, 3-J, 4-F, 5-I, 6-C, 7-B, 8-D, 9-G, 10-H

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Negative means the implied value is below current futures.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It is a single anecdote.

- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. Matt agrees Bookmap pairs well with Rocket Scooter as order-flow confluence.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. Matt still wants a level (VWAP, half-gap, rocket, band) in chop.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Both negative means be careful on gap-hold longs.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** arbitrage
- **2.** higher
- **3.** location
- **4.** heavy
- **5.** flat
- **6.** strong
- **7.** Arb
- **8.** VWAP
- **9.** rises
- **10.** half-gap

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D, 5-B, 6-A, 7-D, 8-B, 9-C, 10-A

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. For stocks that have started to move, calculate how far each can still go; build new implied index value; divide by index divisor; compare with futures; negative means implied below futures; above zero means futures need to go higher; leading indicator; anecdote of 29 points is single.

2. ARB: timing and mismatch, more sensitive, uses different portion of resilience code, includes stocks outside box at face value; resilience: context, polarity read, gap-fill predictor, pivots inside box only; definition card.
3. ARB back to zero after selloff for a scalp with structure; mismatch with price; stack with resilience: both negative careful on gap-hold longs, both supportive float; needs a level in chop.
4. Levels plus RI; VWAP and VARIS; half-gap and gap-fill marks; ARB and resilience; optional Bookmap; when stuck subtract to level plus VWAP side, then add ARB back.
5. ARB is a tell, not a standalone system; filters without location are weak; levels supply where; chop makes filters unreliable.
6. Stocks already tagged half-gap; momentum quality changed; mismatch tell; reassess and size down.
7. Resilience is a polarity and strength read that shows if index gaps are prone to filling based on arbitrage, not a guarantee.
8. Remove optional Bookmap and extra overlays first; then ARB and resilience; keep level and VWAP side; add ARB back.
9. Gap-hold longs; float stories at half-gap; full-size longs at levels; need strong level and small size.
10. Negative ARB means implied index value from moving stocks is below where futures trade now, so if moves continue futures would need to go lower to catch up.

Chapter 13 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. It is a quoted figure the book has not tested.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Avoid YOLOing size at MHP when confluence is negative.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** open-interest
- **2.** avoidance
- **3.** size
- **4.** half

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-A, 3-A, 4-D

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Confirm refresh; pull RI; mark prior close, open, half-gap, full fill; note DD, MHP, yellows; decide what dominates.
2. Backbone and checklist get you in; Ch. 11 says when to reduce or stand down; confluence flip means reduce; forced trades return to alerts.
3. Equities 4:00 p.m. to 9:30; futures reopen after Globex closes; resilience talk means equities gap.
4. 6:00 p.m. Globex anchor vs 9:30; overnight inclusion changes VWAP; VARIS follows; compare settings.

Chapter 14 Test: Instruments and Sessions (ES / NQ / MES Notes)

Part 1: Matching

1-F, 2-I, 3-B, 4-H, 5-G, 6-E, 7-J, 8-C, 9-A, 10-D

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. There are only about 30 mes-mnq hits; it is not a micros-only curriculum.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. The platform does not sell futures data; you connect a futures brokerage account.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. Hosts note they usually don’t buy the opening drive as a default.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. It says do not invent a separate micros playbook.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. MES shares the RI family with ES, not NQ; each index has its own RI.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** engagement
- **2.** NQ
- **3.** data
- **4.** CQG
- **5.** 54
- **6.** 30

- **7.** 9:30
- **8.** smaller
- **9.** jam
- **10.** ES

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-D, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B, 5-D, 6-B, 7-A, 8-C, 9-A, 10-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. One may fill while other holds; ES may have already run; half-gap, VARIS, VWAP stories differ; resilience and ARB per index; own RI each; host executes NQ with ES chart up; compare before market opinion.
2. About 30 hits; same RI family as minis; used for smaller risk, prop limits, first engagement; heavy lifting on expiration day remark; futures data needs brokerage connection, CQG named; ticker from RI table; NQ vs MNQ band differences; no invented micros playbook.
3. Overnight HV and HP plus RI; pre-cash gap, half-gap, DD and MHP vs VWAP; first hour gap-fill vs hold, open-drive caution; midday band-to-band and rocket touches; late smaller size same levels; assembled from habits; not Matt’s schedule.
4. About 54 hits; situational resilience and ARB; news windows; hosts usually don’t buy opening drive by default; naked-trade reasoning; decision block; would not chase a missed drive.
5. Tens of hits means label limited evidence and refuse to overfit; applies to prop, open-drive, micros; write that sentence under those headings; do not invent rules.

6. Divergence is a confluence fact; lower size; consider which index has the cleaner story; host executes NQ with ES chart up; compare before market call.
7. MES shares RI family with ES; MNQ with NQ; each index has own RI; numbers differ widely.
8. Example: limited evidence, about 54 hits; hosts usually do not buy the open drive by default; situational notes only.
9. Overnight and pre-cash rows lack marks; wait; use static DD and RI; first hour caution grows; size smaller.
10. Decision block or strong level such as DD band; extra structure like a zone top; confluence such as VWAP side and resilience; ES and NQ agreement.

Chapter 14 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. It is the other way around: ARB includes stocks outside the box; resilience only pivots inside.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Slicing without reaction means size down.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** location
- **2.** hedge-pressure
- **3.** band
- **4.** close

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-B, 3-D, 4-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Levels plus RI (Ch. 02, 06, 08); VWAP and VARIS (Ch. 03, 07); gap marks (Ch. 04, 05); ARB and resilience (Ch. 13); optional Bookmap.
2. Float with positive resilience at half-gap; gap-fill predictor and polarity read; context role; definition card; direction depends on gap.
3. RI keeps futures near the stocks overnight; beyond can snap; accelerated risk range; band one RI each side.
4. Not A+, coin flip; ladder drops; checklist size matches grade; Ch. 11 skip open and close a lot; small or skip.

Chapter 15 Test: Putting It Together (Day Checklist)

Part 1: Matching

1-H, 2-I, 3-J, 4-E, 5-B, 6-G, 7-C, 8-A, 9-F, 10-D

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. Some boxes are suggested process from this book, marked "process."
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It is a judgment review of process, not only P&L.
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. It says do not buy the opening move just because it is moving; a lone tap is not A+.
- **7.** True.

- **8.** False. They are listed as thin topics.
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Hard stop: stop and return to alerts only.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** RI
- **2.** anchor
- **3.** 1.0
- **4.** fill
- **5.** hunting
- **6.** normal
- **7.** skip
- **8.** dollar
- **9.** smaller
- **10.** emotion

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C, 5-B, 6-A, 7-C, 8-D, 9-B, 10-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. A before session: refresh, RI, anchor, levels, gap, alerts, thin topics; B open and first hour: ES and NQ, no buying the move, flat open; C before entry: level, VWAP side, grade, size, stop and target; D in trade: reduce on flip, size down slicing, no averaging; E after: unchecked boxes, grade vs size, thin temptation, one clip; F hard stops: four forced trades, tools offline.
2. Process boxes are this book’s suggested process, not quoted rules; built from Ch. 02 to 14; adds no new trading rules; be honest about source.

3. Before: refresh, RI, anchor, VARIS plot, levels, gap marks, alerts, thin topics; live: ES and NQ agreement, open behavior, entry grading, in-trade management; marks before decisions; prevents inventing and FOMO.
4. Strong: half-gap and gap-fill, risk management, ARB, RI, confluence, VWAP, volume-hv, rocket-scooter, entry-exit; thin: prop-rules, mes-mnq, open-drive, deep options; practice reps on strong; humility labels on thin; hit counts are mentions not lessons.
5. Unchecked items before first trade; confluence grade vs size; ES and NQ checked; thin-topic temptation; one clip from stuck map not P&L emotion; builds judgment.
6. Any reasonable box, e.g. alerts set and not hunting, confluence graded in writing, size matches grade, four forced trades hard stop.
7. Pick one clip tied to one confusion; write answer first; rewatch to test; few clips between sessions.
8. Unchecked boxes before first trade; grade vs size mismatch; ES and NQ checked; thin-topic temptation; one clip to rewatch.
9. Any three with reasons: level, VWAP side, confluence graded, size matches grade, stop and target with dollar loss.
10. Section A preparation; section E review: why no trade, were levels reached, did you hunt or wait; market avoidance is part of the method.

Chapter 15 Spiral Test

Part 1: Matching

1-B, 2-A, 3-D, 4-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.

- **2.** False. It means implied value is below current futures; the book does not say the index must fall.
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. Wait for refresh; overnight and day MHP differ; do not invent.

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** ES
- **2.** 9
- **3.** band
- **4.** 300

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-C, 2-A, 3-A, 4-B

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Confirm refresh, pull RI, mark gap and levels; set alerts; wait; at level read VWAP side and ARB and resilience; grade; size to grade; stop and target.
2. Labeled limited evidence; prop rules not a compliance guide; open drive caution; micros no curriculum; refuse to overfit.
3. DD static RI from prior close; VARIS dynamic RI around VWAP; MHP monthly hedge pressure from gamma; overnight vs day MHP; all locations for confluence.
4. Resilience gap-fill predictor and polarity; direction depends on gap; ES may fill while NQ does not; ARB and resilience per index; wait or size down.

Final Test A

Part 1: Matching

1-D, 2-G, 3-J, 4-F, 5-A, 6-B, 7-I, 8-E, 9-H, 10-C

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. RI comes from CME margin math and is not a standard deviation (Ch. 01, 06).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. It is about half an RI (Ch. 07).
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. Chapter 05 says it is not a claim that every gap fills.
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. Only about 30 hits; no micros curriculum (Ch. 14).
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Refresh and re-read RI; numbers drift day to day (Ch. 02, 06).

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** average
- **2.** carrot (expand control)
- **3.** Sunday
- **4.** predictor
- **5.** DD
- **6.** retirement
- **7.** predict
- **8.** large
- **9.** minimum
- **10.** leading

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-B, 2-C, 3-B, 4-D, 5-B, 6-D, 7-A, 8-A, 9-D, 10-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. RI from CME margin math per instrument; static RI one RI above and below prior close is DD; dynamic version around VWAP is VARIS at 0.5, 1.0, optional 2.0; pull RI fresh.
2. Mark prior close, open, midpoint, full fill; ask fill, float, fail; add confluence; positive resilience float; negative more careful; lone taps smaller.
3. Normal, medium, small, sit out; strong confluence normal or larger; location is level; filters ARB, resilience, VWAP, cross-index; filters alone rarely enough; level alone smaller.
4. Confirm refresh, wait if late; pull RI; mark prior close, open, half-gap, fill; note DD, MHP, yellows; decide overnight vs gap story.
5. Label limited evidence; prop, open drive, micros; do not invent; RI stream numbers and host management numbers are day examples; book suggestions marked.
6. Equities 4:00 p.m. to 9:30; futures Globex close to reopen; resilience talk means equities gap; write which gap before marking target.
7. Level family, alert, don’t hunt, decide with confluence; checklist level, VWAP side, ARB and resilience, size matches grade, stop and target.
8. Dynamic is overnight estimate while options closed; at 9:30 new MHP and WHP from open interest; overnight MHP and day MHP are separate levels.
9. Each own RI; divergence on fill, half-gap, VWAP; ES can lead NQ; compare before a market opinion; size down on split.
10. Mixed or flipping confluence; slicing through bands; flat open and chop; tools offline; forced trades; lone open taps; sitting out is part of method.

Final Test B

Part 1: Matching

1-J, 2-H, 3-A, 4-I, 5-D, 6-G, 7-B, 8-F, 9-C, 10-E

Part 2: True or False

- **1.** True.
- **2.** False. They are half and full risk intervals (Ch. 03).
- **3.** True.
- **4.** False. They are their backtest framing (Ch. 08, 09).
- **5.** True.
- **6.** False. A host called them “not A+,” a coin flip with a little bit of confluence (Ch. 09).
- **7.** True.
- **8.** False. You need futures data from a connected brokerage account (Ch. 14).
- **9.** True.
- **10.** False. Do not bet on a weaker pivot; a break is a warning (Ch. 09, 11).

Part 3: Fill in the Blank

- **1.** tech support
- **2.** dynamic
- **3.** midpoint
- **4.** reopens
- **5.** day
- **6.** Lambo
- **7.** gamma
- **8.** NASDAQ

- **9.** reduce
- **10.** location

Part 4: Multiple Choice

1-A, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B, 5-A, 6-C, 7-D, 8-D, 9-B, 10-C

Part 5: Essay

Model answer outlines (key points a full answer should cover):

1. Platform: RI, DD, HP, MHP, HV pivots; strategy: wait at level, confluence, size, risk; overlays: VARIS, ARB, Bookmap; day: overnight marks, open story, mid-session bands and rockets.
2. Gap-fill predictor; polarity above zero up, below down; direction depends on price vs gap; 2025-11 and 2025-10 examples; no single sign rule; equities gap.
3. Pre-entry checklist; stop beyond VWAP or invalidation; targets next band, half-gap, fill, opposing rocket; partials and runner; reduce on confluence flip; host examples are day examples.
4. Implied value from moving stocks, divided by index divisor, compared with futures; negative implied below futures; leading indicator; mismatch tell; both negative careful on gap-hold longs; needs a level.
5. Sections A to F by time; boxes point to chapters; process boxes marked; no new rules; end-of-day review judges process; hard stops.
6. Day examples drift; NQ moved nearly nine points; not MES = 288; each instrument own RI; refresh after roll.
7. Predict where volume will be vs prior volume; lone rocket S/R; VARIS, half-gap, VWAP, ARB and resilience upgrade size.
8. VARIS from session open; 6:00 p.m. Globex anchor; can anchor 9:30; other platforms exclude closed time; compare anchors.

9. Levels plus RI; VWAP and VARIS; gap marks; ARB and resilience; optional Bookmap; subtract to level and VWAP side; add ARB back.
10. Smaller size late is book suggestion; return to alerts after forced trades is book suggestion; session template is study template; process boxes in checklist; host management numbers are day examples.